

ALVARO CASTELLANOS M. & CIA.
ABOGADOS
Carrera 9 No. 93 - 09
A.A. 6348
Santa Fe de Bogotá, D.C. COLOMBIA

97 156
SUPERINDUSTRIA Y COMERCIO
Radicación : 01002039 00000002 Folios: 176
Fecha (RND): 2001-05-11 14:39:12
Trámite 002 PATENTES D 1 REGISTRO/ 329 COMPLETOS
Dependencia: 8020 DIVISION DE NUEVAS CREACIONES

Señora

Jefe de la División de Nuevas Creaciones

Superintendencia de Industria y Comercio

Ministerio de Desarrollo Económico

E S D

Ref Expediente No 01 002.039

Solicitud de Patente de Invención titulada

"COMPOSICION"

Solicitante STERIX LIMITED y SCHERING AKTIENGESELLSCHAFT

Yo, MARGARITA CASTELLANOS ABONDANO, mayor de edad, identificada y domiciliada como aparece al plé de mi firma, atentamente me permito presentar a usted las copias certificadas de los documentos de Prioridad de Gran Bretaña No 0000792 2 de Enero 14 de 2000, Gran Bretaña No 0002115 4 de Enero 28 de 2000 y el documento de prioridad Estadounidense No 60/218730 de Julio 17 de 2000, junto con su traducción de carátula y reivindicaciones

En consecuencia atentamente solicito a Ud se anexe dichos documentos al expediente correspondiente a esta solicitud de Patente de Invención

Del Señor Jefe,

Margarita Castellanos
Margarita Castellanos Abondano
C C No 39 779 654 de Usaquén
T P A No 70819 del C Sup de la Judicatura
Carrera 9 No 93 - 09 - Santa Fe de Bogotá
Teléfonos 610 74 80 y 610 74 60

Santa Fe de Bogotá, D C ,
MCA

11 MAYO 2001

98 107

OFICINA DE PATENTES

**OFICINA DE PATENTES
Concept House
Cardiff Road-Newport-South Wales
NP10 8QQ**

Yo, el suscrito, un funcionario debidamente autorizado de acuerdo con la Sección 74(1) y (4) del Acto de Reglamentación y Contratación Exterior de 1994, para firmar y expedir certificados en nombre del Contralor General, certifico por medio del presente que la anexa a la presente es fiel copia de los documentos que se presentaron originalmente con la solicitud de patente aquí identificada.

De acuerdo con las Normas de 1982 de Patentes (Registro de Compañías), si una compañía nombrada en este certificado y cualquier documento adjunto se ha registrado bajo la Ley de Compañías de 1980 con el mismo nombre de aquel con el que estuvo registrada inmediatamente antes del registro, reserva para la sustitución o inclusión la última parte del nombre de las palabras "compañía pública limitada" o sus equivalentes en galés, las referencias al nombre de la compañía en este certificado y cualquier documento anexo será tratado como referencia al nombre con el cual quedó así vuelta a registrar.

De acuerdo con las reglas, las palabras "compañía limitada pública" pueden ser reemplazadas por p.l.c., plc, P.L.C. o PLC.

El nuevo registro bajo la Ley de Sociedades no constituye una nueva entidad legal sino simplemente somete a la compañía a ciertas normas legales adicionales.

Firmado(ilegible)
Fecha: Febrero 5 del 2001

99 103

OFICINA DE PATENTES

Solicitud de otorgamiento de patente 14 de Enero de 2000

1. Su referencia P007942GB DAA

2. Solicitud de Patente No.: 0000792.2

3. Nombre completo, dirección y código postal de cada solicitante:

STERIX LIMITED

SCHERING AKTIENGESELLSCHAFT

Magdalen Centre

Mullerstrasse 178

Robert Robinson Avenue

13342 Berlin

The Oxford Science Park

Alemania

Oxford

Patente ADP No. (si lo sabe) OX4 4GA 7652134001 707612005

Si el solicitante es persona jurídica, dar el país/ estado de su constitución:

INGLATERRA

y

ALEMANIA

4. Título de la invención: **COMPOSICION**

5. Nombre de su agente(si tiene uno) **D YOUNG & CO**

21 NEW FETTER LANE

LONDON

EC4A 1DA

Número ADP de patentes (si tiene uno) 59006

6. Si declara prioridad de una o más solicitudes de patente anteriores, dar el país y fecha de presentación de cada una de las solicitudes anteriores y (si lo sabe) el número de cada solicitud: (EN BLANCO).

7. Si esta solicitud se divide o de otra manera se deriva de una solicitud anterior en el Reino Unido, dar el número y fecha de presentación de la solicitud anterior: (EN BLANCO).

8. Se requiere una declaración del inventor y del derecho a otorgar una patente para dar soporte a esta solicitud? SI

(Conteste "Si" en caso de que:

a) El solicitante nombrado en la parte 3 no es el inventor o

b) existe un invento que no se ha nombrado como solicitante, o

c) cualquier solicitante nombrado es una persona jurídica.

Ver nota (d):

9. Indique el número de hojas para cualquiera de los siguientes items que Ud. esté llenando con este formato. No cuente copias del mismo documento:

100 XA

Hojas de continuación de este formato:- Ninguna
Descripción: 52 páginas
Reivindicaciones: 3
Extracto .1
Dibujos: .11

10. Si también esta presentando uno de los siguientes indique cuántos contra cada item:

Documento de prioridad- Ninguno
Traducciones de documentos de prioridad Ninguno
Extracto de inventoría y derecho de otorgar patente Ninguno
Solicitud de examen preliminar y búsqueda: Ninguno
Solicitud de examen sustantivo Ninguno
Cualquier otro documento: Ninguno

11. Solicitamos el otorgamiento de patente con base en esta solicitud

Firma ilegible D YOUNG & CO- Fecha: 14/01/2000

Agentes para solicitantes

12. Nombre y un numero de teléfono diurno de la persona a contactar en el Reino D Alcock-
023 8063 4816

PREVENCION

Luego que una solicitud de patente ha sido presentada, el Contralor de la Oficina de Patentes considerará si la publicación o comunicación de la invención debe ser prohibida o restringida según la sección 22 de la Ley de Patentes de 1977. Ud será informado si es necesario prohibir o restringir su invención de esta manera. Además, si Ud. vive en el Reino Unido, la Sección 23 de la Ley de Patentes de 1977 le impide solicitar una patente en el exterior sin primero obtener permiso escrito de la Oficina de Patentes a menos que se haya presentado una solicitud por lo menos con 6 semanas de anterioridad en el Reino Unido para patente para la misma invención y no se ha dado orden prohibiendo la publicación o comunicación, o cualquier orden en tal sentido ha sido revocada

NOTAS

a) Si usted necesita ayuda para llenar este formato o tiene preguntas, favor contactar a la Oficina de Patentes en el 0645 500505.

b) Escriba sus respuestas en letras mayúsculas usando tinta negra o Ud. puede hacerlo a máquina.

101 #6

c) Si no hay espacio suficiente para todos los detalles correspondientes en cualquier parte de este formato, favor continuar en hoja de papel separada y escriba "ver hoja a continuación" en las partes pertinentes.

Cualquier hoja adicional debe agregarse a este formato.

d) Si Ud. ha contestado "Si" necesita llenar el Formato de Patentes 7/77.

e) Una vez que haya llenado el formato usted debe recordar firmarlo y ponerle la fecha.

f) Para detalles de derechos y formas de pago favor contactar la Oficina de Patentes.



102 #

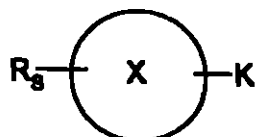
REIVINDICACIONES

1. Una composición farmacéutica que comprende

(i) un compuesto de la fórmula (I)

5

(I) a compound of Formula (I)



Formula I

10

en la cual: X es un anillo de hidrocarbilo con por lo menos 4 átomos en el anillo; K es un grupo hidrocarbilo; Rs es un grupo sulfamato;

(ii) optativamente mezclado con un vehículo, diluyente, excipiente o adyuvante farmacéuticamente aceptable,

donde el compuesto está presente en una cantidad que produce una dosis de no más de 200 mg/día.

15

2. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con la reivindicación 1 en la cual el compuesto está presente en una cantidad que produce una dosis de 10 a 200 mg/día.

20

3. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con la reivindicación 1 ó 2 en la cual el compuesto está presente en una cantidad que produce una dosis de 50 a 200 mg/día.

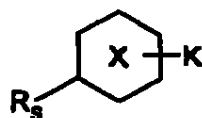
25

4. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con la reivindicación 1 ó 2 en la cual el compuesto está presente en una cantidad que produce una dosis de 20 a 50 mg/día.

5. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con la reivindicación 1 en la cual el compuesto está presente en una cantidad que produce una dosis de no más de 200 mg/día.
- 5 6. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con la reivindicación 1 en la cual el compuesto está presente en una cantidad que produce una dosis de no más de 1 mg/dosis.
- 10 7. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con la reivindicación 1 en la cual el compuesto está presente en una cantidad que produce una dosis de no más de 4 mg/dosis.
- 15 8. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con cualquiera de las reivindicaciones precedentes, en la cual X en combinación con K imita una estructura esteroide.
9. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con cualquiera de las reivindicaciones precedentes, en la cual K es un grupo cíclico.
- 20 10. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con cualquiera de las reivindicaciones precedentes, en la cual X es un anillo de seis miembros.

11. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con cualquiera de las reivindicaciones precedentes, en la cual el anillo X tiene seis átomos de carbono en el anillo.

5 12. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con cualquiera de las reivindicaciones precedentes, en la cual el compuesto es de la Fórmula II.



Formula II

10 en la cual cada uno de R_s, X y K son como se los definiera en la reivindicación 1.

15

13. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con cualquiera de las reivindicaciones precedentes, en la cual X en combinación con K es una estructura de anillo esteroide.

20

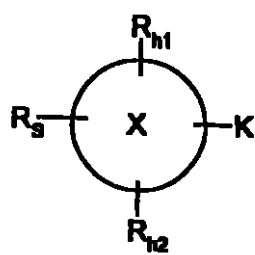
14. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con cualquiera de las reivindicaciones precedentes, en la cual el grupo K y el anillo X constituyen una estructura de anillo esteroide o un derivado sustituido de la misma.

15. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con la reivindicación 14 en la cual el grupo Rs está en la posición 3 del anillo X.

16. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con cualquiera de las reivindicaciones precedentes, en la cual Rs es un grupo sulfamato.

17. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con cualquiera de las reivindicaciones precedentes, en la cual el compuesto es de la fórmula III

10



Formula III

15 en la cual X, K y Rs son como se los definiera en la reivindicación 1, y donde Rh1 es un grupo halo optativo; Rh2 es un grupo halo optativo; por lo menos uno de Rh1 y Rh2 está presente.

18. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con la reivindicación 17, en la cual Rh1 está en la posición 2 del anillo X.

19. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con la reivindicación 17 ó 18 en la cual Rh2 está presente en la posición 4 del anillo X.

106 114

20. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con cualquiera de las reivindicaciones precedentes para usar en medicina.

5 21. El uso de una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con cualquiera de las reivindicaciones 1 a 19 en la elaboración de un medicamento para usar en la anticoncepción oral.

10 22. El uso de una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con cualquiera de las reivindicaciones 1 a 19 en la elaboración de un medicamento para usar en terapia de reemplazo hormonal.

15 23. El uso de una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con cualquiera de las reivindicaciones 1 a 19 en la elaboración de un medicamento para usar en la terapia de un trastorno o enfermedad asociada con STS.

24. El uso de una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con cualquiera de las reivindicaciones 1 a 19 en la elaboración de un medicamento para usar en la terapia de un trastorno o enfermedad asociada con niveles adversos de STS.



INVESTOR IN PEOPLE



4/6
107

The Patent Office
Concept House
Cardiff Road
Newport
South Wales
NP10 8QQ

I, the undersigned, being an officer duly authorised in accordance with Section 74(1) and (4) of the Deregulation & Contracting Out Act 1994, to sign and issue certificates on behalf of the Comptroller-General, hereby certify that annexed hereto is a true copy of the documents as originally filed in connection with the patent application identified therein.

In accordance with the Patents (Companies Re-registration) Rules 1982, if a company named in this certificate and any accompanying documents has re-registered under the Companies Act 1980 with the same name as that with which it was registered immediately before re-registration save for the substitution as, or inclusion as, the last part of the name of the words "public limited company" or their equivalents in Welsh, references to the name of the company in this certificate and any accompanying documents shall be treated as references to the name with which it is so re-registered.

In accordance with the rules, the words "public limited company" may be replaced by p.l.c., plc, P.L.C. or PLC.

Re-registration under the Companies Act does not constitute a new legal entity but merely subjects the company to certain additional company law rules.

Signed

AmBrewer

Dated

05 FEB 2001

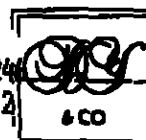
Patents Form 1/77

Patents Act 1977
(Rule 16)

THE PATENT OFFICE
A
14 JAN 2000
RECEIVED BY FAX

The
Patent
Office

14JAN00 E505219-1 D02244
P01/7700 0 00-0000792.2



Request for a grant of a patent

(See the notes on the back of this form. You can also get an explanatory leaflet from the Patent Office to help you fill in this form.)

The Patent Office

Cardiff Road
Newport
Gwent NP23 5RH

1.	Your reference	P007942GB DAA		
2.	Patent application number (The Patent Office will fill in this part)	0000792.2 /		
3.	Full name, address and postcode of the or of each applicant (underline all surnames)	STETEX Limited Magdalen Centre Robert Robinson Avenue The Oxford Science Park Oxford OX4 4GA	Schering Aktiengesellschaft Mullerstrasse 178 13342 Berlin Germany	762134001 707612005
	Patent ADP number (if you know it)			
	If the applicant is a corporate body, give the country/state of its incorporation	United Kingdom and Germany		
4.	Title of the invention	Composition		
5.	Name of your agent (if you have one)	D YOUNG & CO		
	"Address for service" in the United Kingdom to which all correspondence should be sent (including the postcode)	21 NEW FETTER LANE LONDON EC4A 1DA		
	Patent ADP number (if you have one)	59006		
6.	If you are declaring priority from one or more earlier patent applications, give the country and date of filing of the or each of these earlier applications and (if you know it) the or each application number	Country	Priority application number (if you know it)	Date of filing (day/month/year)
7.	If this application is divided or otherwise derived from an earlier UK application, give the number and filing date of the earlier application	Number of earlier applications	Date of filing (day/month/year)	

- 8 Is a statement of inventorship and of right to grant of a patent required in support of this request? (Answer 'Yes' if:
 a) any applicant named in part 3 is not an inventor or
 b) there is an inventor who is not named as an applicant or
 c) any named applicant is a corporate body
 See notes (d))

Yes

- 9 Enter the number of sheets for any of the following items you are filing with this form. Do not count copies of the same document

Continuation sheets of this form 0

Description 52 /

Claims(s) 3 /

Abstract 1 /

Drawing(s) 11 /

- 10 If you are also filing any of the following, state how many against each item.

Priority documents 0

Translations of priority documents 0

Statement of inventorship and right to grant of a patent (Patents Form 7/77) 0

Request for preliminary examination and search (Patents Form 9/77) 0

Request for substantive examination (Patents Form 10/77) 0

Any other documents (please specify) 0

11.

I/We request the grant of a patent on the basis of this application.

Signature

Date

D Young & Co
 D YOUNG & CO
 Agents for the Applicants

14/1/2000

12. Name and daytime telephone number of the person in contact in the United Kingdom

D Alcock

023 8063 4816

Warning

After an application for a patent has been filed, the Comptroller of the Patent Office will consider whether publication or communication of the invention should be prohibited or restricted under Section 23 of the Patents Act 1977. You will be informed if it is necessary to prohibit or restrict your invention in this way. Furthermore, if you live in the United Kingdom, Section 23 of the Patents Act 1977 stops you from applying for a patent abroad without first getting written permission from the Patent Office unless an application has been filed or at least 6 weeks before-hand in the United Kingdom for a patent for the same invention and either no direction prohibiting publication or communication has been given, or any such direction has been revoked.

Notes

a) If you need help to fill in this form or you have any questions, please contact the Patent Office on 01645 580505

b) Write your answers in capital letters using black ink or you may type them

c) If there is not enough space for all the relevant details on any part of this form, please continue on a separate sheet of paper and write "see continuation sheet in the relevant part(s)". Any continuation sheet should be attached to this form.

d) If you answered 'Yes' Patents Form 7/77 will need to be filed

e) Once you have filled in the form you must remember to sign and date it

f) For details of the fee and ways to pay please contact the Patent Office.

109 +18
DUPLICATE

COMPOSITION

FIELD OF INVENTION

5 The present invention relates to a composition.

10 In particular the present invention relates to a pharmaceutical composition comprising a compound in an amount to provide a dosage of no greater than 200 µg/day. The compound is a cyclic compound comprising ring system and a sulphamate group. The present invention also relates to the use of the composition in therapy applications.

BACKGROUND TO THE INVENTION

15 Estrogens play a major role in hormonal contraception, in menopausal hormone replacement therapy (HRT), and for treating gynaecological diseases (e.g. mammary carcinoma) and andrologic diseases (e.g. prostatic carcinoma). For HRT and contraception, estrogens are mainly used together with a gestagen, e.g. (levonorgestrel, desogestrel, norethisterone, cyproterone acetate, chlormadinone acetate, dienogest).

20 When used for contraception, estrogens are needed for safely suppressing follicle maturation and ovulation, but in addition they replace the endogenous ovarian secretion of estradiol which is suppressed to a major extent. This replacement is important for maintaining an artificial menstrual cycle and other genital functions, which could not be done to any satisfactory extent by just using a gestagen.

25 In addition, endogenous and exogenous estrogens fulfil important central nervous and metabolic functions in the female organism. Normal estrogen levels make a decisive contribution to a woman's well-being. Their presence in the system counteracts the development of cardiovascular diseases through various mechanisms: generation of "favourable" lipoprotein patterns in the blood, inhibition of lipid deposits in the walls of blood vessels, reduction in blood pressure by favourably influencing the vascular tone, lowering of the perfusion resistance in essential vascular sectors, attenuation of contractile stimuli at the vascular muscle. The tunicae intimae, when influenced by estrogens, release factors that counteract the formation of thrombi. Estrogens are also indispensable for preserving the bone structure in women. Their absence may result in destruction of the bone (osteoporosis). These latter "central nervous" and "metabolic" effects of estrogens are a main aspect of HRT. It can be considered that estrogens have

35

analogous functions in the male organism, and that their withdrawal results in similar disorders as in women. One difference between the two sexes is that hormone production in males ceases less regularly and at a later age than that in women.

5 But notwithstanding all positive aspects of estrogen therapy there are unsolved problems, too, which restrict the therapeutic use of estrogens or entail undesired effects.

10 The known estrogens show pharmacokinetic deficits. Natural estrogens (estradiol, oestrone, oestrone sulphate, esters of estradiol, oestrilol) become bioavailable only to a very low degree when taken orally. This degree may vary so much from person to person that general dosage recommendations cannot be given. Fast elimination of the substances from the blood is another problem. Estrogen replacement under HRT often has to be adjusted to the individual.

15 The same is true of synthetic estrogens. The most important synthetically altered estrogenic steroid is ethinyl-estradiol (EE). This estrogen is dominant in oral hormonal contraception. Apart from EE, mestranol is used in a few cases, this is a "prodrug" that is metabolised to EE in the organism. When applied orally to humans, EE has a much better bioavailability than the natural estrogens mentioned above, but its oral bioavailability varies to an large extent from individual to individual. Several authors have pointed to this as well as to the fact that concentrations in the blood proved to be highly irregular after oral application of this substance (Goldzieher, J. W. 1989, Goldzieher, J. W. 1990, Humpel, M. 1987, Kuhniz, 1993).

25 In addition the known estrogens show pharmacodynamic deficits. After resorption from the intestinal lumen, orally applied active ingredients enter the organism via the liver. This fact is of specific importance for estrogenic agents as the liver is a target organ for estrogens, oral intake of estrogens results in strong estrogenic effects in the liver. The secretion activity that is controlled by estrogens in the human liver includes synthesis of transfer proteins CBG, SHBG, TBG, angiotensinogen, several factors that are important for the physiology of blood clotting, and lipoproteins. If natural estrogens are introduced to the female organism while avoiding passage through the liver (e.g. by transdermal application), the liver functions mentioned remain virtually unchanged. Therapeutically equivalent doses of natural estrogens (see definition above), when applied orally, result in clear responses of hepatic parameters: increase of SHBG, CBG, angiotensinogen, HDL (high density lipoprotein). These hepatic effects of estrogen are clearly stronger when, instead of natural estrogens, equine estrogen formulations (so-called conjugated

110 114

estrogens) are used (Campbell, S et al, 1981) Ethinyl estradiol and DES have an even greater hepatic oestrogenicity,

When referring to antigonadotropic properties, EE is about 4 to 18 times more estrogenic in the liver than orally applied natural estrogens are (Campbell, S et al 1981) This is a very unfavourable dissociation of properties

These deficits are of considerable clinical significance when known natural and synthetic estrogens are to be applied.

A known complication that may occur after applying high doses of estrogen to males suffering from prostatic carcinoma is fatal thromboembolism. The potential of EE to produce side effects in the liver determines, though in a somewhat weakened form, the strategy of oral hormonal contraception. With a view to desired contraceptive effects and maintenance of the menstrual process on the one hand, and the need to take into account the considerable side effect potential on the other, controlling EE levels in the blood may be compared to a tightrope walk. It is quite possible that a large percentage of women cannot apply oral contraceptives because either menstrual bleeding abnormalities or estrogen-related side effects exceed the tolerance threshold.

Evidence suggests that estrogens are the major mitogens involved in promoting the growth of tumours in endocrine-dependent tissues such as the breast and endometrium. Although plasma estrogen concentrations are similar in women with or without breast cancer, breast tumour oestrons and oestradiol levels are significantly higher than in normal breast tissue or blood. *In situ* synthesis of oestrogen is thought to make an important contribution to the high levels of oestrogens in tumours and therefore inhibitors, in particular specific inhibitors, of oestrogen biosynthesis are of potential value for the treatment of endocrine-dependent tumours.

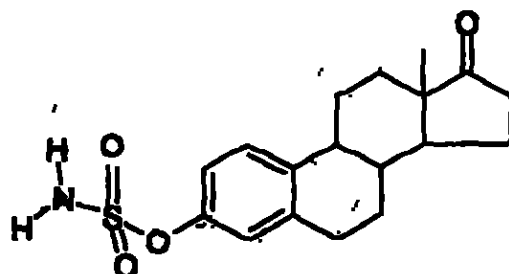
Over the past two decades there has been considerable interest in the development of inhibitors of the aromatase pathway - which converts the androgen precursor androstenedione to oestrone. However, there is now evidence that the oestrone sulphatase (E1-STS) pathway, i.e. the hydrolysis of oestrone sulphate to oestrone (E1S to E1), as opposed to the aromatase pathway, is the major source of oestrogen in breast tumours. This theory is supported by a modest reduction of plasma oestrogen concentration in postmenopausal women with breast cancer treated by aromatase inhibitors, such as aminoglutethimide and 4-hydroxyandrostenedione, and also by the fact

14,

that plasma E1S concentration in these aromatase inhibitor-treated patients remains relatively high. The long half-life of E1S in blood (10-12 h) compared with the unconjugated oestrogens (20 min) and high levels of steroid sulphatase activity in liver and, normal and malignant breast tissues, also lend support to this theory.

PCT/GB92/01567 teaches novel steroid sulphatase inhibitors and pharmaceutical compositions containing them for use in the treatment of oestrogen dependent tumours especially breast cancer. These steroid sulphatase inhibitors are sulphamate esters such as N,N-dimethyl oestrone-3-sulphamate and, preferably oestrone-3-sulphamate (otherwise known as "EMATE")

EMATE (oestrone-3-O-sulphamate) -- has the following structure



It is known that EMATE is a potent E1-STS inhibitor as it displays more than 99% inhibition of E1-STS activity in intact MCF-7 cells at 0.1 mM. EMATE also inhibits the E1-STS enzyme in a time- and concentration-dependent manner, indicating that it acts as an active site-directed inactivator. Although EMATE was originally designed for the inhibition of E1-STS, it also inhibits dehydroepiandrosterone sulphatase (DHA-STS), which is an enzyme that is believed to have a pivotal role in regulating the biosynthesis of the oestrogenic steroid androstenediol. Also, there is now evidence to suggest that androstenediol may be of even greater importance as a promoter of breast tumour growth. EMATE is also active in vivo as almost complete inhibition of rat liver E1-STS (99%) and DHA-STS (99%) activities resulted when it is administered either orally or subcutaneously. In addition, EMATE has been shown to have a memory enhancing effect in rats. Studies in mice have suggested an association between DHA-STS activity and the regulation of part of the immune response. It is thought that this may also occur in humans. The bridging O-atom of the sulphamate moiety in EMATE is important for inhibitory activity. Thus, when the 3-O-atom is replaced by other heteroatoms as in

111 ~~120~~

oestrone-3-N-sulphamate and oestrone-3-S-sulphamate these analogues are weaker non-time-dependent inactivators

Although optimal potency for inhibition of E1-STS may have been attained in EMATE, it is possible that oestrone may be released during sulphatase inhibition and that EMATE and its oestradiol congener may possess oestrogenic activity

Ahmed et al (Biochem Biophys Res Commun 1999 Jan 27;254(3) 511-5) report on a structure-activity relationship study of steroidal and nonsteroidal inhibitors of STS

It is therefore an aim of the present invention to provide novel compositions suitable for oral contraception hormone replacement therapy the inhibition of E1-STS as well as other therapeutic applications.

SUMMARY ASPECTS OF THE PRESENT INVENTION

The present invention is based on the surprising finding that compositions providing a cyclic compound, which cyclic compound comprises a ring system and a sulphamate group ("a sulphamate compound"), in an amount to provide a dosage of no greater than 200 µg/day may provide oral contraception, hormone replacement therapy, and/or the inhibition of E1-STS. At the dosage provided by the composition of the present invention, the delivered compounds show a more favourable relation between desired and therapeutically undesired effects.

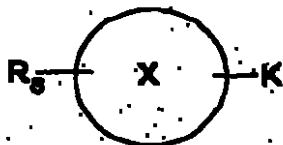
The sulphamate compounds comprise at least one ring component. That ring component comprises at least 4 atoms in the ring. Typically, those 4 atoms will be carbon atoms. Thus, typically, that ring component will be a hydrocarbyl group. The cyclic compound also includes a sulphamate group as further substituent(s) on the ring system. The sulphamate group is a substituent on the ring component.

DETAILED ASPECTS OF THE PRESENT INVENTION

According to one aspect of the present invention, there is provided a pharmaceutical composition comprising:

- (i) a compound of Formula (I)

15



Formula I

wherein: X is a hydrocarbyl ring having at least 4 atoms in the ring; K is a hydrocarbyl group; Rs is a sulphamate group;

(ii) optionally admixed with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, diluent, excipient or adjuvant,

wherein the compound is present in an amount to provide a dosage of no greater than 200 µg/day.

The above maximum dosage and all dosages referred to in the present specification relate to a dosage for a 70 kg subject, unless indicated to the contrary. A person skilled in the art would readily be able to modify the recited dosages for a subject having a mass other than 70kg.

The dosage per day is calculated by dividing the dose to be administered to the subject by the anticipated dosage period in days. The anticipated dosage period will typically be the period until the next administration, the period over which the dose is to have effect or the period over which the dose is required to have effect.

According to one aspect of the present invention, there is provided a composition according to the present invention for use in medicine.

According to one aspect of the present invention, there is provided the use of a composition according to the present invention in the manufacture of a medicament for use in oral contraception.

According to one aspect of the present invention, there is provided the use of a composition according to the present invention in the manufacture of a medicament for use in hormone replacement therapy.

According to one aspect of the present invention, there is provided the use of a composition according to the present invention in the manufacture of a medicament for use in the therapy of a condition or disease associated with STB.

112 124

According to one aspect of the present invention, there is provided the use of a compound according to the present invention in the manufacture of a medicament for use in the therapy of a condition or disease associated with adverse STS levels.

According to one aspect of the present invention, there is provided a method of treating a subject comprising administering to said subject a compound according to the present invention in an amount of no greater than 200 µg/day.

For ease of reference, these and further aspects of the present invention are now discussed under appropriate section headings. However, the teachings under each section are not necessarily limited to each particular section.

PREFERABLE ASPECTS

Preferably, the compound is present in the composition in an amount to provide a dosage of from 10 to 200 µg/day.

Preferably, the compound is present in the composition in an amount to provide a dosage of from 50 to 200 µg/day.

Preferably, the compound is present in the composition in an amount to provide a dosage of from 20 to 50 µg/day.

The composition may be formulated such that administration daily, weekly or monthly will provide the desired daily dosage. For example, the present invention may provide a composition comprising the sulphamate compound in amount of no greater than 200 µg/dose (for daily dose), no greater than 1.4 mg/dose (weekly dose) or no greater than 5 mg/dose (monthly dose). It will be appreciated that the composition may also be formulated for administration more or less frequently than daily, weekly or monthly.

Preferably, X in combination with K mimics a steroidal structure.

Preferably, K is a cyclic group.

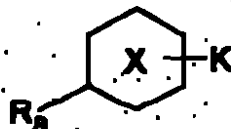
Preferably, X is a six-membered ring.

Preferably, the ring X has six carbon atoms in the ring.

16

Preferably, the compound of Formula I has the formula presented as Formula II wherein each of R_s , X and K have the above-mentioned meanings.

Formula II



Preferably the group K and the ring X together will contain, inclusive of all substituents, a maximum of about 50 carbon atoms, more usually no more than about 30 to 40 carbon atoms.

Preferably, X in combination with K is a steroidal ring structure.

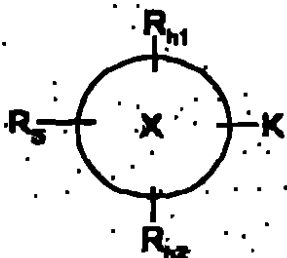
Preferably, group K and ring X are a steroid ring structure or a substituted derivative thereof.

Preferably, the R_s group is at position 3 of the ring X.

Preferably, R_s is a sulphamate group.

Preferably the compound is of Formula III

Formula III



wherein X, K and R_s are as defined above; and wherein R_{h1} is an optional halo-group; R_{h2} is an optional halo-group; at least one of R_{h1} and R_{h2} is present.

Preferably, the R_{h1} is at position 2 of the ring X.

Preferably, the R_{h2} is at position 4 of the ring X.

113 H22

For some applications, preferably the compounds have no, or a minimal, oestrogenic effect.

For some applications, preferably the compounds have an oestrogenic effect.

In one embodiment, the composition of the present invention are useful for the treatment of breast cancer.

SOME ADVANTAGES

Key advantages of the present invention include the improved pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of the composition of the present invention.

One key advantage of the present invention is that at the delivered dosage the sulphamate compounds have a low hepatic metabolism. It is believed that the compounds of the present invention, such as EMATE, have a high affinity to erythrocytes, upto 99% of the compound in blood is so bound. Liver passage of the compound in this compartment avoids extraction, metabolism and hepatic first pass action. Thus the delivered sulphamate compounds have a high bioavailability.

A further key advantage of the present invention is that the sulphamate compounds exhibit low variation in concentration in plasma between individuals. The reduction in variation between individuals of estrogen levels in the blood particularly allows for the provision of a monoproduct for both hysterectomised and non-hysterectomised subjects without the need to develop separate products.

A further key advantage of the present invention is that the sulphamate compounds exhibit slow elimination from the subject. The composition of the present invention provide steady plasma levels of oestrone (E1) and oestradiol (E2).

One key advantage of the present invention is that at the delivered dosage the sulphamate compounds have a low hormone action. Therefore the risks of deep vein thrombosis are reduced.

One key advantage of the present invention is that at the delivered dosage protection of bones is provided, yet the dose is below the endometrial proliferation/stimulation threshold. As described above, estrogens are indispensable for preserving the bone

17

structure in women. Their absence may result in destruction of the bone (osteoporosis). However, in typical HRT an oestrogen is administered at a dose such that, as well as the beneficial effects, the endometrium proliferates. The composition of the present invention provides a hormone replacement therapy for bone protection without endometrial stimulation.

Another advantage is that some of the compounds may not be capable of being metabolised to compounds which display or induce hormonal activity.

Some of the compounds of the present invention are also advantageous in that they may be orally active.

Some of the compounds of the present invention may be useful for the treatment of cancer, such as breast cancer, as well as (or in the alternative) non-malignant conditions, such as the prevention of auto-immune diseases, particularly when pharmaceuticals may need to be administered from an early age.

Thus, some of the compounds of the present invention are also believed to have therapeutic uses other than for the treatment of endocrine-dependent cancers, such as the treatment of autoimmune diseases.

HORMONE REPLACEMENT THERAPY

The composition of the present invention may be formulated to provide a hormone replacement therapy. The composition will be formulated to contain the sulphate compound in amount such that, depending on the prescribed frequency of administration, the required daily dosage of sulphate compound is provided.

In one aspect the composition will be formulated to allow for daily administration. This composition may be formulated in combination with progestins.

In all aspects of the present invention, including daily oral administration, hormone replacement therapy is achieved in a manner more convenient than application of a transdermal patch, the typical administration route for HRT.

DAILY

11

114 23

When a daily regimen is provided of, for example an administration of 100 µg/day, the following key advantages are particularly observed

- reduction in variation of estrogen levels in the blood of the subject between individuals
- steady plasma levels of E1 and E2

When a daily regimen is provided of an administration of 20 to 50 µg/day the following key advantages are particularly observed

- no uterine bleeding is observed
- no mammary gland impact

WEEKLY

In one aspect the composition will be formulated to allow for weekly administration. A weekly dose of 0.5 to 2 mg/week, for example 1 mg/week may be provided.

A weekly dose will be advantageous for reasons of convenience over both patches and the daily administration of the composition of the present invention.

MONTHLY

A monthly HRT composition of the present invention is also envisaged in which a single monthly dosage of 2 to 4mg, or up to 5mg/dose, of compound is provided

Furthermore the pharmaceutical compositions containing the compounds according to the invention can be used for treatment of endometrioses and for therapy of oestrogen-dependent tumours. In this respect one key advantage of the present invention is that the sulphamate compounds of the present invention can act as steroid sulphatase inhibitors.

STEROID SULPHATASE

Steroid sulphatase - which is sometimes referred to as steroid sulfatase or steryl sulphatase or "STS" for short - hydrolyses several sulphated steroids, such as oestrone sulphate, dehydroepiandrosterone sulphate and cholesterol sulphate. STS has been allocated the enzyme number EC 3.1.6.2.

18

STS has been cloned and expressed. For example see Stein et al (J. Biol. Chem. 264:13865-13872 (1989)) and Yan et al (Cell 49:443-454(1987)).

STS is an enzyme that has been implicated in a number of disease conditions.

By way of example, workers have found that a total deficiency in STS produces ichthyosis. According to some workers, STS deficiency is fairly prevalent in Japan. The same workers (Sakura et al, J Inherit Metab Dis 1987 Nov;20(6):807-10) have also reported that allergic diseases - such as bronchial asthma, allergic rhinitis, or atopic dermatitis - may be associated with a steroid sulphatase deficiency.

In addition to disease states being brought on through a total lack of STS activity, an increased level of STS activity may also bring about disease conditions. By way of example, and as indicated above, there is strong evidence to support a role of STS in breast cancer growth and metastasis.

STS has also been implicated in other disease conditions. By way of example, Le Roy et al (Behav Genet 1999 Mar;29(2):131-6) have determined that there may be a genetic correlation between steroid sulphatase concentration and initiation of attack behaviour in mice. The authors conclude that sulphatation of steroids may be the prime mover of a complex network, including genes shown to be implicated in aggression by mutagenesis.

STS INHIBITION

It is believed that some disease conditions associated with STS activity are due to conversion of a nonactive, sulphated oestrone to an active, nonsulphated oestrone. In disease conditions associated with STS activity, it would be desirable to inhibit STS activity.

Here, the term "inhibit" includes reduce and/or eliminate and/or mask and/or prevent the detrimental action of STS.

STS INHIBITOR

In accordance with the present invention, the compound of the present invention is capable of acting as an STS inhibitor.

115 724

Here, the term "inhibitor" as used herein with respect to the compound of the present invention means a compound that can inhibit STS activity - such as reduce and/or eliminate and/or mask and/or prevent the detrimental action of STS. The STS inhibitor may act as an antagonist.

The ability of compounds to inhibit oestrogen sulphatase activity can be assessed using either intact MCF-7 breast cancer cells or placental microsomes. In addition, an animal model may be used. Details on suitable Assay Protocols are presented in following sections. It is to be noted that other assays could be used to determine STS activity and thus STS inhibition. For example, reference may also be made to the teachings of WO-A-99/50453.

Preferably, for some applications, the compound is further characterised by the feature that if the sulphamate group were to be substituted by a sulphate group to form a sulphate derivative, then the sulphate derivative would be hydrolysable by an enzyme having steroid sulphatase (E.C. 3.1.8.2) activity - i.e. when incubated with steroid sulphatase EC 3.1.8.2 at pH 7.4 and 37°C.

In one preferred embodiment, if the sulphamate group of the compound were to be replaced with a sulphate group to form a sulphate compound then that sulphate compound would be hydrolysable by an enzyme having steroid sulphatase (E.C. 3.1.8.2) activity and would yield a K_m value of less than 200 mmolar, preferably less than 150 mmolar, preferably less than 100 mmolar, preferably less than 75 mmolar, preferably less than 50 mmolar, when incubated with steroid sulphatase EC 3.1.8.2 at pH 7.4 and 37°C.

In a preferred embodiment, the compound of the present invention is not hydrolysable by an enzyme having steroid sulphatase (E.C. 3.1.8.2) activity.

For some applications, preferably the compound of the present invention has at least about a 100 fold selectivity to a desired target (e.g. STS), preferably at least about a 150 fold selectivity to the desired target, preferably at least about a 200 fold selectivity to the desired target, preferably at least about a 250 fold selectivity to the desired target, preferably at least about a 300 fold selectivity to the desired target, preferably at least about a 350 fold selectivity to the desired target.

It is to be noted that the compound of the present invention may have other beneficial properties in addition to or in the alternative to its ability to inhibit STS activity.

GROUP K

Group K need not be a cyclic structure. In this regard, group K may be a linear structure that may have the ability to conform to a ring like structure when in *in vivo*.

In a preferred aspect, group K is cyclic - so as to form the cyclic group K.

Cyclic group K need not necessarily be fused to ring X. In this regard, they may be separated by a suitable spacer group - which may be a hydrocarbyl group.

In a preferred aspect, cyclic group K is fused to ring X.

Group K may be a polycyclic group, which need not be a fused polycycle.

Thus, in a preferred aspect, group K and ring X make up a polycyclic compound. As indicated, here the term "polycyclic" includes fused and non-fused ring structures including combinations thereof.

At least one of the cyclic groups K and X may be a heterocyclic group (a heterocycle) or a non-heterocyclic group.

At least one of the cyclic groups K and X may be a saturated ring structure or an unsaturated ring structure (such as an aryl group).

Preferably, at least one of the cyclic groups is an aryl ring.

If the cyclic group is polycyclic some or all of the ring components of the compound may be fused together or joined via one or more suitable spacer groups.

The polycyclic compound may comprise a number of fused rings. In this aspect the fused rings may comprise any combination of different size rings, such as 3 six-membered rings (6,6,6), a six-membered ring, a seven-membered ring and a six-membered ring (6,7,6), a six-membered ring and two eight-membered rings (6,8,8) etc.

In one aspect the present invention relates to compounds wherein the polycyclic compounds are other than (6,6,7) rings. In a further aspect, the present invention relates to

116 75

compounds wherein the polycyclic compounds only contain rings having other than 7 members.

Preferably the polycyclic compound will contain, inclusive of all substituents, no more than 50 about carbon atoms, more usually no more than about 30 to 40 carbon atoms.

The polycyclic compound can comprise at least two ring components, or at least three ring components, or at least four ring components.

Preferably, the polycyclic compound comprises four ring components.

Preferred polycyclic compounds have a steroidal ring component, or bio-isosteres thereof.

HYDROCARBYL

The term "hydrocarbyl group" as used herein means a group comprising at least C and H, and may optionally comprise one or more other suitable substituents. Examples of such substituents may include halo, alkoxy, nitro, an alkyl group, a cyclic group etc. In addition to the possibility of the substituents being a cyclic group, a combination of substituents may form a cyclic group. If the hydrocarbyl group comprises more than one C then those carbons need not necessarily be linked to each other. For example, at least two of the carbons may be linked via a suitable element or group. Thus, the hydrocarbyl group may contain hetero atoms. Suitable hetero atoms will be apparent to those skilled in the art and include, for instance, sulphur, nitrogen and oxygen. A non-limiting example of a hydrocarbyl group is an acyl group.

A typical hydrocarbyl group is a hydrocarbon group. Here the term "hydrocarbon" means any one of an alkyl group, an alkenyl group, an alkynyl group, which groups may be linear, branched or cyclic, or an aryl group. The term hydrocarbon also includes those groups but wherein they have been optionally substituted. If the hydrocarbon is a branched structure having substituent(s) thereon, then the substitution may be on either the hydrocarbon backbone or on the branch; alternatively the substitutions may be on the hydrocarbon backbone and on the branch.

SULPHAMATE GROUP

10

In one embodiment, the ring X has a sulphamate group as a substituent. The term "sulphamate" as used herein includes an ester of sulphamic acid, or an ester of an N-substituted derivative of sulphamic acid, or a salt thereof.

If Ra is a sulphamate group then the compound of the present invention is referred to as a sulphamate compound.

Typically, the sulphamate group has the formula:



wherein preferably R1 and R2 are independently selected from H, alkyl, cycloalkyl, alkenyl and aryl, or combinations thereof, or together represent alkylene, wherein the or each alkyl or cycloalkyl or alkenyl or optionally contain one or more hetero atoms or groups.

When substituted, the N-substituted compounds of this invention may contain one or two N-alkyl, N-alkenyl, N-cycloalkyl or N-aryl substituents, preferably containing or each containing a maximum of 10 carbon atoms. When R1 and/or R2 is alkyl, the preferred values are those where R1 and R2 are each independently selected from lower alkyl groups containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms, that is to say methyl, ethyl, propyl etc. R1 and R2 may both be methyl. When R1 and/or R2 is aryl, typical values are phenyl and tolyl (PhCH₃; o). Where R1 and R2 represent cycloalkyl, typical values are cyclopropyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl etc. When joined together R1 and R2 typically represent an alkylene group providing a chain of 4 to 9 carbon atoms, optionally interrupted by one or more hetero atoms or groups, e.g. to provide a 5 membered heterocycle, e.g. morpholino, pyrrolidino or piperidino.

Within the values alkyl, cycloalkyl, alkenyl and aryl substituted groups are included containing as substituents therein one or more groups which do not interfere with the sulphatase inhibitory activity of the compound in question. Exemplary non-interfering substituents include hydroxy, amino, halo, alkoxy, alkyl and aryl.

In some embodiments, the sulphamate group may form a ring structure by being fused to (or associated with) one or more atoms in or on group X.

17

117 T6

In some embodiments, there may be more than one sulphamate group. By way of example, there may be two sulphamates (i.e. bis-sulphamate compounds). If these compounds are based on a steroidal nucleus, preferably the second (or at least one of the additional) sulphamate group is located at position 17 of the steroidal nucleus. These groups need not be the same.

In some preferred embodiments, at least one of R1 and R2 is H.

In some further preferred embodiments, each of R1 and R2 is H.

MIMIC

In one aspect, X and K can be a mimic of a steroidal ring structure.

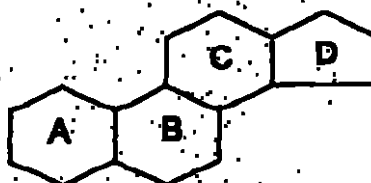
The term "mimic" as used herein means having a similar or different structure but having a similar functional effect. In other words, group K and ring X together may be a bio-isostere of the rings of a steroid, or an active part thereof.

In a preferred aspect, group K and ring X together may be a bio-isostere of the rings of oestrone, or a part thereof.

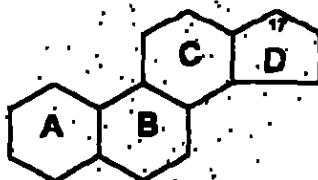
STEROIDAL RING STRUCTURE

In one preferred aspect, X and K make up a steroidal ring structure - that is to say a cyclopentanophenanthrene skeleton, or bio-isosteres thereof.

As it is well known in the art, a classical steroidal ring structure has the generic formula of:



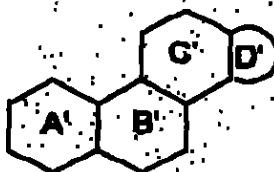
18



In the above formula, the rings have been labelled in the conventional manner.

- 5 An example of a bio-isostere is when any one or more of rings A, B, C and D is a heterocyclic ring and/or when any one or more of rings A, B, C and D has been substituted and/or when any one or more of rings A, B, C and D has been modified; but wherein the bio-isostere in the absence of the sulphamate group has steroidal properties.

- 10 In this regard, the structure of a preferred polycyclic structure can be presented as:



- 15 wherein each ring A', B', C' and D' independently represents a heterocyclic ring or a non-heterocyclic ring, which rings may be independently substituted or unsubstituted, saturated or unsaturated.

- 20 By way of example, any one or more of rings A', B', C' and D' may be independently substituted with suitable groups - such as an alkyl group, an aryl group, a hydroxy group, a halo group, a hydrocarbyl group, an oxyhydrocarbyl group etc.

An example of D' is a five or six membered non-heterocyclic ring having at least one substituent.

- 25 In one preferred embodiment, the ring D' is substituted with a ethinyl group.

If any one of rings A', B', C' and D' is a heterocyclic ring, then preferably that heterocyclic ring comprises a combination of C atoms and at least one N atom and/or at least one O atom. Other heterocyclic atoms may be present in the ring.

30

118 ~~118~~

Examples of suitable, preferred steroidal nuclei rings A'-D' of the compounds of the present invention include rings A-D of dehydroepiandrosterone and oestrogens including oestrone.

Preferred steroidal nuclei rings A'-D' of the compounds of the present invention include rings A-D of:

oestrones and substituted oestrones, viz:

oestrone

4-OH-oestrone

6 α -OH-oestrone

7 α -OH-oestrone

16 α -OH-oestrone

16 β -OH-oestrone

17-deoxyoestrone

oestrone

oestradiols and substituted oestradiols, viz:

4-OH-17 β -oestradiol

6 α -OH-17 β -oestradiol

7 α -OH-17 β -oestradiol

4-OH-17 α -oestradiol

6 α -OH-17 α -oestradiol

7 α -OH-17 α -oestradiol

16 α -OH-17 α -oestradiol

16 α -OH-17 β -oestradiol

16 β -OH-17 α -oestradiol

16 β -OH-17 β -oestradiol

17 α -oestradiol

17 β -oestradiol

17 α -ethinyl-17 β -oestradiol

17 β -ethinyl-17 α -oestradiol

17-deoxyoestradiol

oestriols and substituted oestriols, viz:

oestriol

22

4-OH-~~oestrol~~
6 α -OH-~~oestrol~~
7 α -OH-~~oestrol~~
17-deoxy~~oestrol~~

dehydroepiandrosterone and substituted dehydroepiandrosterones, viz.
dehydroepiandrosterone

6 α -OH-dehydroepiandrosterone
7 α -OH-dehydroepiandrosterone
16 α -OH-dehydroepiandrosterone
16 β -OH-dehydroepiandrosterone

In general terms the ring system A'B'C'D' may contain a variety of non-interfering substituents. In particular, the ring system A'B'C'D' may contain one or more hydroxy, alkyl especially lower (C₁-C₆) alkyl, e.g. methyl, ethyl, n-propyl, isopropyl, n-butyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, n-pentyl and other pentyl isomers, and n-hexyl and other hexyl isomers, alkoxy especially lower (C₁-C₆) alkoxy, e.g. methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy etc., alkynyl, e.g. ethynyl, or halogen, e.g. fluoro substituents.

NON-STEROID STRUCTURES

In an alternative embodiment, the compound of the present invention may not contain or be based on a steroid nucleus. In this regard, the polycyclic compound may contain or be based on a non-steroidal ring system such as diethylstilboestrol, stilboestrol, coumarins, flavonoids, combretastin and other ring systems. Other suitable non-steroidal compounds for use in or as the composition of the present invention may be found in US-A-5587831.

OTHER SUBSTITUENTS

The compound of the present invention may have substituents other than Rh1, Rh2 and Rs. By way of example, these other substituents may be one or more of: one or more sulphamate group(s), one or more phosphonate group(s), one or more thiophosphonate group(s), one or more sulphonate group(s), one or more sulphonamide group(s), one or more halo groups, one or more O groups, one or more hydroxy groups, one or more amino groups, one or more sulphur containing group(s), one or more hydrocarbyl group(s) - such as an oxyhydrocarbyl group.

OXYHYDROCARBYL

The term "oxyhydrocarbyl" group as used herein means a group comprising at least C, H and O and may optionally comprise one or more other suitable substituents. Examples of such substituents may include halo-, alkoxy-, nitro-, an alkyl group, a cyclic group etc. In addition to the possibility of the substituents being a cyclic group, a combination of substituents may form a cyclic group. If the oxyhydrocarbyl group comprises more than one C then those carbons need not necessarily be linked to each other. For example, at least two of the carbons may be linked via a suitable element or group. Thus, the oxyhydrocarbyl group may contain hetero atoms. Suitable hetero atoms will be apparent to those skilled in the art and include, for instance, sulphur and nitrogen.

In one embodiment of the present invention, the oxyhydrocarbyl group is an oxyhydrocarbon group.

Here the term "oxyhydrocarbon" means any one of an alkoxy group, an oxyalkenyl group, an oxyalkynyl group, which groups may be linear, branched or cyclic, or an oxyaryl group. The term "oxyhydrocarbon" also includes those groups but wherein they have been optionally substituted. If the oxyhydrocarbon is a branched structure having substituent(s) thereon, then the substitution may be on either the hydrocarbon backbone or on the branch; alternatively the substitutions may be on the hydrocarbon backbone and on the branch.

Typically, the oxyhydrocarbyl group is of the formula $C_{1-6}O$ (such as a $C_{1-3}O$).

ASSAY FOR DETERMINING STS ACTIVITY USING CANCER CELLS (PROTOCOL 1)

Inhibition of Steroid Sulphatase Activity in MCF-7 cells

Steroid sulphatase activity is measured *in vitro* using intact MCF-7 human breast cancer cells. This hormone dependent cell line is widely used to study the control of human breast cancer cell growth. It possesses significant steroid sulphatase activity (MacIndoe et al. Endocrinology, 123, 1281-1287 (1988); Purohit & Reed, Int. J. Cancer, 50, 901-906 (1992)) and is available in the U.S.A. from the American Type Culture Collection (ATCC) and in the U.K. (e.g. from The Imperial Cancer Research Fund).

Cells are maintained in Minimal Essential Medium (MEM) (Flow Laboratories, Irvine, Scotland) containing 20 mM HEPES, 5% foetal bovine serum, 2 mM glutamine, non-essential amino acids and 0.075% sodium bicarbonate. Up to 30 replicate 25 cm² tissue culture flasks are seeded with approximately 1×10^6 cells/flask using the above medium. Cells are grown to 80% confluency and the medium is changed every third day.

Intact monolayers of MCF-7 cells in triplicate 25 cm² tissue culture flasks are washed with Earle's Balanced Salt Solution (EBSS from ICN Flow, High Wycombe, U.K.) and incubated for 3-4 hours at 37°C with 5 pmol (7×10^5 dpm) [6,7-³H]oestrone-3-sulphate (specific activity 80 Ci/mmol from New England Nuclear, Boston, Mass., U.S.A.) in serum-free MEM (2.5 ml) together with oestrone-3-sulphamate (11 concentrations: 0; 1fM; 0.01pM; 0.1pM; 1pM; 0.01nM; 0.1nM; 1nM; 0.01mM; 0.1mM; 1mM). After incubation each flask is cooled and the medium (1 ml) is pipetted into separate tubes containing [¹⁴C]oestrone (7×10^3 dpm) (specific activity 97 Ci/mmol from Amersham International Radiochemical Centre, Amersham, U.K.). The mixture is shaken thoroughly for 30 seconds with toluene (5 ml). Experiments have shown that >80% [¹⁴C] oestrone and <0.1% [³H]oestrone-3-sulphate is removed from the aqueous phase by this treatment. A portion (2 ml) of the organic phase is removed, evaporated and the ³H and ¹⁴C content of the residue determined by scintillation spectrometry. The mass of oestrone-3-sulphate hydrolysed was calculated from the ³H counts obtained (corrected for the volumes of the medium and organic phase used, and for recovery of [¹⁴C] oestrone added) and the specific activity of the substrate. Each batch of experiments includes incubations of microsomes prepared from a sulphatase-positive human placenta (positive control) and flasks without cells (to assess apparent non-enzymatic hydrolysis of the substrate). The number of cell nuclei per flask is determined using a Coulter Counter after treating the cell monolayers with Zaponin. One flask in each batch is used to assess cell membrane status and viability using the Trypan Blue exclusion method (Phillips, H.J. (1973) In: Tissue culture and applications, [eds: Kruse, D.F. & Patterson, M.K.]; pp. 405-408; Academic Press, New York).

Results for steroid sulphatase activity are expressed as the mean $\pm$ 1 S.D. of the total product (oestrone + oestradiol) formed during the incubation period (20 hours) calculated for 10⁶ cells and, for values showing statistical significance, as a percentage reduction (inhibition) over incubations containing no oestrone-3-sulphamate. Unpaired Student's t-test was used to test the statistical significance of results.

170 ~~18~~

ASSAY FOR DETERMINING STS ACTIVITY USING PLACENTAL MICROSOMES (PROTOCOL 2)

Inhibition of Steroid Sulphatase Activity in Placental Microsomes

Sulphatase-positive human placenta from normal term pregnancies are thoroughly minced with scissors and washed once with cold phosphate buffer (pH 7.4, 50 mM) then re-suspended in cold phosphate buffer (5 ml/g tissue). Homogenisation is accomplished with an Ultra-Turrax homogeniser, using three 10 second bursts separated by 2 minute cooling periods in ice. Nuclear and cell debris are removed by centrifuging (4°C) at 2000g for 30 minutes and portions (2 ml) of the supernatant are stored at 20°C. The protein concentration of the supernatants is determined by the method of Bradford (Anal. Biochem., 72, 248-254 (1976)).

Incubations (1 ml) are carried out using a protein concentration of 100 mg/ml, substrate concentration of 20 mM (6,7-³H) oestrone-3-sulphate (specific activity 80 Ci/mmol from New England Nuclear, Boston, Mass., U.S.A.) and an incubation time of 20 minutes at 37°C. If necessary eight concentrations of compounds are employed: 0 (i.e. control); 0.05mM; 0.1mM; 0.2mM; 0.4mM; 0.6mM; 0.8mM; 1.0mM. After incubation each sample is cooled and the medium (1 ml) was pipetted into separate tubes containing [¹⁴C] oestrone (7 x 10³ dpm) (specific activity 97 Ci/mmol from Amersham International Radiochemical Centre, Amersham, U.K.). The mixture is shaken thoroughly for 30 seconds with toluene (5 ml). Experiments have shown that >90% [¹⁴C] oestrone and <0.1% [³H] oestrone-3-sulphate is removed from the aqueous phase by this treatment. A portion (2 ml) of the organic phase was removed, evaporated and the ³H and ¹⁴C content of the residue determined by scintillation spectrometry. The mass of oestrone-3-sulphate hydrolysed is calculated from the ³H counts obtained (corrected for the volumes of the medium and organic phase used, and for recovery of [¹⁴C] oestrone added) and the specific activity of the substrate.

ANIMAL ASSAY MODEL FOR DETERMINING STS ACTIVITY (PROTOCOL 3)

Inhibition of oestrone sulphatase activity *in vivo*

24

The compounds of the present invention may be studied using an animal model, in particular in ovariectomised rats. In this model compounds which are oestrogenic stimulate uterine growth.

The compound (0.1 mg/Kg/day for five days) is administered orally to rats with another group of animals receiving vehicle only (propylene glycol). At the end of the study samples of liver tissue were obtained and oestrone sulphatase activity assayed using ³H oestrone sulphate as the substrate as previously described (see PCT/GB95/02638).

ANIMAL ASSAY MODEL FOR DETERMINING OESTROGENIC ACTIVITY (PROTOCOL 4)

Lack of *in vivo* oestrogenicity

The compounds of the present invention may be studied using an animal model, in particular in ovariectomised rats. In this model, compounds which are oestrogenic stimulate uterine growth.

The compound (0.1 mg/Kg/day for five days) was administered orally to rats with another group of animals receiving vehicle only (propylene glycol). At the end of the study uteri were obtained and weighed with the results being expressed as uterine weight/whole body weight x 100.

Compounds having no significant effect on uterine growth are not oestrogenic.

BIOTECHNOLOGICAL ASSAYS FOR DETERMINING STS ACTIVITY (PROTOCOL 5)

The ability of compounds to inhibit oestrone sulphatase activity can also be assessed using amino acid sequences or nucleotide sequences encoding STS, or active fragments, derivatives, homologues or variants thereof in, for example, high-through put screens.

Any one or more of appropriate targets - such as an amino acid sequence and/or nucleotide sequence - may be used for identifying an agent capable of modulating STS in any of a variety of drug screening techniques. The target employed in such a test may be free in solution, affixed to a solid support, borne on a cell surface, or located intracellularly. The abolition of target activity or the formation of binding complexes between the target and the agent being tested may be measured.

129
121

The assay of the present invention may be a screen, whereby a number of agents are tested. In one aspect, the assay method of the present invention is a high through put screen.

Techniques for drug screening may be based on the method described in Geysen, European Patent Application 84/03564, published on September 13, 1984. In summary, large numbers of different small peptide test compounds are synthesized on a solid substrate, such as plastic pins or some other surface. The peptide test compounds are reacted with a suitable target or fragment thereof and washed. Bound entities are then detected - such as by appropriately adapting methods well known in the art. A purified target can also be coated directly onto plates for use in a drug screening techniques. Alternatively, non-neutralising antibodies can be used to capture the peptide and immobilise it on a solid support.

This invention also contemplates the use of competitive drug screening assays in which neutralising antibodies capable of binding a target specifically compete with a test compound for binding to a target.

Another technique for screening provides for 'high throughput screening' (HTS) of agents having suitable binding affinity to the substances and is based upon the method described in detail in WO 84/03564.

It is expected that the assay methods of the present invention will be suitable for both small and large-scale screening of test compounds as well as in quantitative assays.

In one preferred aspect, the present invention relates to a method of identifying agents that selectively modulate STS, which compounds have the formula (Ia).

REPORTERS

A wide variety of reporters may be used in the assay methods (as well as screens) of the present invention with preferred reporters providing conveniently detectable signals (eg. by spectroscopy). By way of example, a reporter gene may encode an enzyme which catalyses a reaction which alters light absorption properties.

Other protocols include enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA).

25

radiolimmunoassay (RIA) and fluorescent activated cell sorting (FACS). A two-site, monoclonal-based immunoassay utilizing monoclonal antibodies reactive to two non-interfering epitopes may even be used. These and other assays are described, among other places, in Hampton R. et al (1990, Serological Methods, A Laboratory Manual, APS Press, St Paul MN) and Maddox DE et al (1983, J Exp Med 15 8:121 1).

Examples of reporter molecules include but are not limited to (β -galactosidase, invertase, green fluorescent protein, luciferase, chloramphenicol, acetyltransferase, α -glucuronidase, α -glucanase and glucamylase. Alternatively, radiolabelled or fluorescent tag-labelled nucleotides can be incorporated into nascent transcripts which are then identified when bound to oligonucleotide probes.

By way of further examples, a number of companies such as Pharmacia Biotech (Piscataway, NJ), Promega (Madison, WI), and US Biochemical Corp (Cleveland, OH) supply commercial kits and protocols for assay procedures. Suitable reporter molecules or labels include those radionuclides, enzymes, fluorescent, chemiluminescent, or chromogenic agents as well as substrates, cofactors, inhibitors, magnetic particles and the like. Patents teaching the use of such labels include US-A-3817837; US-A-3850762; US-A-3939350; US-A-3996345; US-A-4277457; US-A-4275149 and US-A-4366241.

HOST CELLS

The term "host cell" - in relation to the present invention includes any cell that could comprise the target for the agent of the present invention.

Thus, a further embodiment of the present invention provides host cells transformed or transfected with a polynucleotide that is or expresses the target of the present invention. Preferably said polynucleotide is carried in a vector for the replication and expression of polynucleotides that are to be the target or are to express the target. The cells will be chosen to be compatible with the said vector and may for example be prokaryotic (for example bacterial), fungal, yeast or plant cells.

The gram negative bacterium *E. coli* is widely used as a host for heterologous gene expression. However, large amounts of heterologous protein tend to accumulate inside the cell. Subsequent purification of the desired protein from the bulk of *E. coli* intracellular proteins can sometimes be difficult.

In contrast to *E. coli*, bacteria from the genus *Bacillus* are very suitable as heterologous hosts because of their capability to secrete proteins into the culture medium. Other bacteria suitable as hosts are those from the genera *Streptomyces* and *Pseudomonas*.

Depending on the nature of the polynucleotide encoding the polypeptide of the present invention, and/or the desirability for further processing of the expressed protein, eukaryotic hosts such as yeasts or other fungi may be preferred. In general, yeast cells are preferred over fungal cells because they are easier to manipulate. However, some proteins are either poorly secreted from the yeast cell, or in some cases are not processed properly (e.g. hyperglycosylation in yeast). In these instances, a different fungal host organism should be selected.

Examples of suitable expression hosts within the scope of the present invention are fungi such as *Aspergillus* species (such as those described in EP-A-0184438 and EP-A-0284603) and *Trichoderma* species; bacteria such as *Bacillus* species (such as those described in EP-A-0134648 and EP-A-0253455), *Streptomyces* species and *Pseudomonas* species; and yeasts such as *Kluyveromyces* species (such as those described in EP-A-0096430 and EP-A-0301670) and *Saccharomyces* species. By way of example, typical expression hosts may be selected from *Aspergillus niger*, *Aspergillus niger* var. *tubigenis*, *Aspergillus niger* var. *awamori*, *Aspergillus aculeatis*, *Aspergillus nidulans*, *Aspergillus oryzae*, *Trichoderma reesei*, *Bacillus subtilis*, *Bacillus licheniformis*, *Bacillus amyloliquefaciens*, *Kluyveromyces lactis* and *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*.

The use of suitable host cells - such as yeast, fungal and plant host cells - may provide for post-translational modifications (e.g. myristoylation, glycosylation, truncation, lipidation and tyrosine, serine or threonine phosphorylation) as may be needed to confer optimal biological activity on recombinant expression products of the present invention.

ORGANISM

The term "organism" in relation to the present invention includes any organism that could comprise the target according to the present invention and/or products obtained therefrom. Examples of organisms may include a fungus, yeast or a plant.

The term "transgenic organism" in relation to the present invention includes any organism that comprises the target according to the present invention and/or products obtained.

TRANSFORMATION OF HOST CELLS/HOST ORGANISMS

As indicated earlier, the host organism can be a prokaryotic or a eukaryotic organism. Examples of suitable prokaryotic hosts include *E. coli* and *Bacillus subtilis*. Teachings on the transformation of prokaryotic hosts is well documented in the art, for example see Sambrook *et al* (Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual, 2nd edition, 1989, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press) and Ausubel *et al*, Current Protocols in Molecular Biology (1995), John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

If a prokaryotic host is used then the nucleotide sequence may need to be suitably modified before transformation - such as by removal of introns.

In another embodiment the transgenic organism can be a yeast. In this regard, yeast have also been widely used as a vehicle for heterologous gene expression. The species *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* has a long history of industrial use, including its use for heterologous gene expression. Expression of heterologous genes in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* has been reviewed by Gooday *et al* (1987, Yeast Biotechnology, D. R. Barry *et al*, eds, pp 401-429, Allen and Unwin, London) and by King *et al* (1989, Molecular and Cell Biology of Yeasts, E. F. Walton and G. T. Yarranton, eds, pp 107-133, Blackie, Glasgow).

For several reasons *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* is well suited for heterologous gene expression. First, it is non-pathogenic to humans and it is incapable of producing certain endotoxins. Second, it has a long history of safe use following centuries of commercial exploitation for various purposes. This has led to wide public acceptability. Third, the extensive commercial use and research devoted to the organism has resulted in a wealth of knowledge about the genetics and physiology as well as large-scale fermentation characteristics of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*.

A review of the principles of heterologous gene expression in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* and secretion of gene products is given by E. Hinchcliffe E. Kenny (1993, "Yeast as a vehicle for the expression of heterologous genes", Yeasts, Vol. 5, Anthony H. Rose and J. Stuart Harrison, eds, 2nd edition, Academic Press Ltd.).

Several types of yeast vectors are available, including integrative vectors, which require recombination with the host genome for their maintenance, and autonomously replicating plasmid vectors.

123

In order to prepare the transgenic *Saccharomyces*, expression constructs are prepared by inserting the nucleotide sequence into a construct designed for expression in yeast. Several types of constructs used for heterologous expression have been developed. The constructs contain a promoter active in yeast fused to the nucleotide sequence, usually a promoter of yeast origin, such as the GAL1 promoter, is used. Usually a signal sequence of yeast origin, such as the sequence encoding the SUC2 signal peptide, is used. A terminator active in yeast ends the expression system.

For the transformation of yeast several transformation protocols have been developed. For example, a transgenic *Saccharomyces* according to the present invention can be prepared by following the teachings of Hinnen et al (1978, Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the USA 75, 1928); Beggs, J D (1978, Nature, London, 275, 104); and Ito, H et al (1983, J.Bacteriology 153, 163-168).

The transformed yeast cells are selected using various selective markers. Among the markers used for transformation are a number of auxotrophic markers such as LEU2, HIS4 and TRP1, and dominant antibiotic resistance markers such as aminoglycoside antibiotic markers, eg G418.

Another host organism is a plant. The basic principle in the construction of genetically modified plants is to insert genetic information in the plant genome so as to obtain a stable maintenance of the inserted genetic material. Several techniques exist for inserting the genetic information, the two main principles being direct introduction of the genetic information and introduction of the genetic information by use of a vector system. A review of the general techniques may be found in articles by Potrykus (Annu Rev Plant Physiol Plant Mol Biol [1991] 42:205-225) and Christou (Agro-Food-Industry HI-Tech March/April 1994: 17-27). Further teachings on plant transformation may be found in EP-A-0440375.

Thus, the present invention also provides a method of transforming a host cell with a nucleotide sequence that is to be the target or is to express the target. Host cells transformed with the nucleotide sequence may be cultured under conditions suitable for the expression of the encoded protein. The protein produced by a recombinant cell may be displayed on the surface of the cell. If desired, and as will be understood by those of skill in the art, expression vectors containing coding sequences can be designed with signal sequences which direct secretion of the coding sequences through a particular

27

prokaryotic or eukaryotic cell membrane. Other recombinant constructions may join the coding sequence to nucleotide sequence encoding a polypeptide domain which will facilitate purification of soluble proteins (Kroll DJ et al (1993) DNA Cell Biol 12:441-53).

VARIANTS/HOMOLOGUES/DERIVATIVES

In addition to the specific amino acid sequences and nucleotide sequences mentioned herein, the present invention also encompasses the use of variants, homologues and derivatives thereof. Here, the term "homology" can be equated with "identity".

In the present context, an homologous sequence is taken to include an amino acid sequence which may be at least 75, 85 or 90% identical, preferably at least 95 or 98% identical. Although homology can also be considered in terms of similarity (i.e. amino acid residues having similar chemical properties/functions), in the context of the present invention it is preferred to express homology in terms of sequence identity.

Homology comparisons can be conducted by eye, or more usually, with the aid of readily available sequence comparison programs. These commercially available computer programs can calculate % homology between two or more sequences.

% homology may be calculated over contiguous sequences, i.e. one sequence is aligned with the other sequence and each amino acid in one sequence is directly compared with the corresponding amino acid in the other sequence, one residue at a time. This is called an "ungapped" alignment. Typically, such ungapped alignments are performed only over a relatively short number of residues.

Although this is a very simple and consistent method, it fails to take into consideration that, for example, in an otherwise identical pair of sequences, one insertion or deletion will cause the following amino acid residues to be put out of alignment, thus potentially resulting in a large reduction in % homology when a global alignment is performed. Consequently, most sequence comparison methods are designed to produce optimal alignments that take into consideration possible insertions and deletions without penalising unduly the overall homology score. This is achieved by inserting "gaps" in the sequence alignment to try to maximise local homology.

However, these more complex methods assign "gap penalties" to each gap that occurs in the alignment so that, for the same number of identical amino acids, a sequence

alignment with as few gaps as possible - reflecting higher relatedness between the two compared sequences - will achieve a higher score than one with many gaps. "Affine gap costs" are typically used that charge a relatively high cost for the existence of a gap and a smaller penalty for each subsequent residue in the gap. This is the most commonly used gap scoring system. High gap penalties will of course produce optimised alignments with fewer gaps. Most alignment programs allow the gap penalties to be modified. However, it is preferred to use the default values when using such software for sequence comparisons. For example when using the GCG Wisconsin Bestfit package (see below) the default gap penalty for amino acid sequences is -12 for a gap and -4 for each extension.

Calculation of maximum % homology therefore firstly requires the production of an optimal alignment, taking into consideration gap penalties. A suitable computer program for carrying out such an alignment is the GCG Wisconsin Bestfit package (University of Wisconsin, U.S.A.; Devereux et al., 1984, Nucleic Acids Research 12:387). Examples of other software that can perform sequence comparisons include, but are not limited to, the BLAST package (see Ausubel et al., 1999 *ibid* - Chapter 18), FASTA (Atschul et al., 1990, J. Mol. Biol., 403-410) and the GENWORKS suite of comparison tools. Both BLAST and FASTA are available for offline and online searching (see Ausubel et al., 1999 *ibid*, pages 7-58 to 7-60). However it is preferred to use the GCG Bestfit program.

A further useful reference is that found in FEMS Microbiol Lett 1999 May 15;174(2):247-50 (and a published erratum appears in FEMS Microbiol Lett 1999 Aug 1;177(1):187-8).

Although the final % homology can be measured in terms of identity, the alignment process itself is typically not based on an all-or-nothing pair comparison. Instead, a scaled similarity score matrix is generally used that assigns scores to each pairwise comparison based on chemical similarity or evolutionary distance. An example of such a matrix commonly used is the BLOSUM62 matrix - the default matrix for the BLAST suite of programs. GCG Wisconsin programs generally use either the public default values or a custom symbol comparison table if supplied (see user manual for further details). It is preferred to use the public default values for the GCG package, or in the case of other software, the default matrix, such as BLOSUM62.

Once the software has produced an optimal alignment, it is possible to calculate % homology, preferably % sequence identity. The software typically does this as part of the sequence comparison and generates a numerical result.

The sequences may also have deletions, insertions or substitutions of amino acid residues which produce a silent change and result in a functionally equivalent substance. Deliberate amino acid substitutions may be made on the basis of similarity in polarity, charge, solubility, hydrophobicity, hydrophilicity, and/or the amphipathic nature of the residues as long as the secondary binding activity of the substance is retained. For example, negatively charged amino acids include aspartic acid and glutamic acid; positively charged amino acids include lysine and arginine; and amino acids with uncharged polar head groups having similar hydrophilicity values include leucine, isoleucine, valine, glycine, alanine, asparagine, glutamine, serine, threonine, phenylalanine, and tyrosine.

Conservative substitutions may be made, for example according to the Table below. Amino acids in the same block in the second column and preferably in the same line in the third column may be substituted for each other.

ALIPHATIC	Non-polar	GAP
		ILV
	Polar - uncharged	CSTM
		NQ
AROMATIC	Polar - charged	DE
		KR
		HFVY

EXPRESSION VECTORS

The nucleotide sequence for use as the target or for expressing the target can be incorporated into a recombinant replicable vector. The vector may be used to replicate and express the nucleotide sequence in and/or from a compatible host cell. Expression may be controlled using control sequences which include promoters/enhancers and other expression regulation signals. Prokaryotic promoters and promoters functional in eukaryotic cells may be used. Tissue specific or stimuli-specific promoters may be used. Chimeric promoters may also be used comprising sequence elements from two or more different promoters described above.

The protein produced by a host recombinant cell by expression of the nucleotide sequence may be secreted or may be contained intracellularly depending on the

sequence and/or the vector used. The coding sequences can be designed with signal sequences which direct secretion of the substance coding sequences through a particular prokaryotic or eukaryotic cell membrane.

FUSION PROTEINS

The target amino acid sequence may be produced as a fusion protein, for example to aid in extraction and purification. Examples of fusion protein partners include glutathione-S-transferase (GST), 6xHis, GAL4 (DNA binding and/or transcriptional activation domains) and (-galactosidase. It may also be convenient to include a proteolytic cleavage site between the fusion protein partner and the protein sequence of interest to allow removal of fusion protein sequences. Preferably the fusion protein will not hinder the activity of the target.

The fusion protein may comprise an antigen or an antigenic determinant fused to the substance of the present invention. In this embodiment, the fusion protein may be a non-naturally occurring fusion protein comprising a substance which may act as an adjuvant in the sense of providing a generalised stimulation of the immune system. The antigen or antigenic determinant may be attached to either the amino or carboxy terminus of the substance.

In another embodiment of the invention, the amino acid sequence may be ligated to a heterologous sequence to encode a fusion protein. For example, for screening of peptide libraries for agents capable of affecting the substance activity, it may be useful to encode a chimeric substance expressing a heterologous epitope that is recognized by a commercially available antibody.

THERAPY

The compounds of the present invention may be used as therapeutic agents - i.e. in therapy applications.

The term "therapy" includes curative effects, alleviation effects, and prophylactic effects.

The therapy may be on humans or animals, preferably female animals.

PHARMACEUTICAL COMPOSITIONS

The present invention provides a pharmaceutical composition, which comprises a compound according to the present invention and optionally a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, diluent or excipient (including combinations thereof).

The pharmaceutical compositions may be for human or animal usage in human and veterinary medicine and will typically comprise any one or more of a pharmaceutically acceptable diluent, carrier, or excipient. Acceptable carriers or diluents for therapeutic use are well known in the pharmaceutical art, and are described, for example, in Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences, Mack Publishing Co. (A. R. Gennaro edit. 1985). The choice of pharmaceutical carrier, excipient or diluent can be selected with regard to the intended route of administration and standard pharmaceutical practice. The pharmaceutical compositions may comprise as - or in addition to - the carrier, excipient or diluent any suitable binder(s), lubricant(s), suspending agent(s), coating agent(s), solubilizing agent(s).

Preservatives, stabilizers, dyes and even flavoring agents may be provided in the pharmaceutical composition. Examples of preservatives include sodium benzoate, sorbic acid and esters of p-hydroxybenzoic acid. Antioxidants and suspending agents may be also used.

There may be different composition/formulation requirements dependant on the different delivery systems. By way of example, the pharmaceutical composition of the present invention may be formulated to be delivered using a mini-pump or by a mucosal route, for example, as a nasal spray or aerosol for inhalation or ingestible solution; or parenterally, in which the composition is formulated by an injectable form, for delivery, by, for example, an intravenous, intramuscular or subcutaneous route. Alternatively, the formulation may be designed to be delivered by both routes.

Where the agent is to be delivered mucosally through the gastrointestinal mucosa, it should be able to remain stable during transit though the gastrointestinal tract; for example, it should be resistant to proteolytic degradation, stable at acid pH and resistant to the detergent effects of bile.

Where appropriate, the pharmaceutical compositions can be administered by inhalation, in the form of a suppository or pessary, as an intrauterine system, topically in the form of

76 174

a lotion, solution, cream, ointment or dusting powder, by use of a skin patch, orally in the form of tablets containing excipients such as starch or lactose, or in capsules or ovules either alone or in admixture with excipients, or in the form of elixirs, solutions or suspensions containing flavouring or colouring agents, or they can be injected parenterally, for example intravenously, intramuscularly or subcutaneously. For parenteral administration, the compositions may be best used in the form of a sterile aqueous solution which may contain other substances, for example enough salts or monosaccharides to make the solution isotonic with blood. For buccal or sublingual administration the compositions may be administered in the form of tablets or lozenges which can be formulated in a conventional manner.

COMBINATION PHARMACEUTICAL

The compound of the present invention may be used in combination with one or more other active agents, such as one or more other pharmaceutically active agents.

By way of example, the compounds of the present invention may be used in combination with other STS inhibitors and/or other inhibitors such as an aromatase inhibitor (such as for example, 4-hydroxyandrostenedione (4-OHA)) and/or steroids - such as the naturally occurring sterosteroids dehydroepiandrosterone sulphate (DHEAS) and pregnenolone sulphate (PS) and/or other structurally similar organic compounds.

The compounds according to the invention may be used alone or in combination with a progestin.

In addition, or in the alternative, the compound of the present invention may be used in combination with a biological response modifier.

The term biological response modifier (BRM) includes cytokines, immune modulators, growth factors, haematopoiesis regulating factors, colony stimulating factors, chemotactic, haemolytic and thrombolytic factors, cell surface receptors, ligands, leukocyte adhesion molecules, monoclonal antibodies, preventative and therapeutic vaccines, hormones, extracellular matrix components, fibronectin, etc. For some applications, preferably, the biological response modifier is a cytokine. Examples of cytokines include: Interleukins (IL) - such as IL-1, IL-2, IL-3, IL-4, IL-5, IL-6, IL-7, IL-8, IL-9, IL-10, IL-11, IL-12, IL-13; Tumour Necrosis Factor (TNF) - such as TNF- α ; Interferon alpha, beta and gamma; TGF- β . For some applications, preferably the cytokine is tumour

necrosis factor (TNF). For some applications, the TNF may be any type of TNF - such as TNF- α , TNF- β , including derivatives or mixtures thereof. More preferably the cytokine is TNF- α . Teachings on TNF may be found in the art - such as WO-A-98/08870 and WO-A-98/13348.

ADMINISTRATION

Typically, a physician will determine the actual dosage which will be most suitable for an individual subject and it will vary with the age, weight and response of the particular patient. The dosages below are exemplary of the average case. There can, of course, be individual instances where higher or lower dosage ranges are merited.

The compositions of the present invention may be administered by direct injection. The composition may be formulated for parenteral, mucosal, intramuscular, intravenous, subcutaneous, intraocular or transdermal administration.

The specific dose level and frequency of dosage for any particular patient may be varied and will depend upon a variety of factors including the activity of the specific compound employed, the metabolic stability and length of action of that compound, the age, body weight, general health, sex, diet, mode and time of administration, rate of excretion, drug combination, the severity of the particular condition, and the host undergoing therapy.

Aside from the typical modes of delivery - indicated above - the term "administered" also includes delivery by techniques such as lipid mediated transfection, liposomes, immunoliposomes, lipofectin, cationic facial amphiphiles (CFAs) and combinations thereof. The routes for such delivery mechanisms include but are not limited to mucosal, nasal, oral, parenteral, gastrointestinal, topical or sublingual routes.

The term "administered" includes but is not limited to delivery by a mucosal route, for example, as a nasal spray or aerosol for inhalation or as an ingestible solution; a parenteral route where delivery is by an injectable form, such as, for example, an intravenous, intramuscular or subcutaneous route.

Thus, for pharmaceutical administration, the STS inhibitors of the present invention can be formulated in any suitable manner utilizing conventional pharmaceutical formulating techniques and pharmaceutical carriers, adjuvants, excipients, diluents etc. and usually

127 25

for parenteral administration. Dosages may be given in single dose regimes, split dose regimes and/or in multiple dose regimes lasting over several days. For oral administration they may be formulated in tablets, capsules, solution or suspension. Alternatively the compounds will be formulated for parenteral administration in a suitable parenterally administrable carrier and providing single daily dosage rates. Effective daily doses will, however, vary depending on inherent activity of the active ingredient and on the bodyweight of the patient, such variations being within the skill and judgement of the physician.

CELL CYCLING

The compounds of the present invention may be useful in the method of treatment of a cell cycling disorder.

As discussed in "Molecular Cell Biology" 3rd Ed. Lodish et al. pages 177-181 different eukaryotic cells can grow and divide at quite different rates. Yeast cells, for example, can divide every 120 min., and the first divisions of fertilised eggs in the embryonic cells of sea urchins and insects take only 1530 min. because one large pre-existing cell is subdivided. However, most growing plant and animal cells take 10-20 hours to double in number, and some duplicate at a much slower rate. Many cells in adults, such as nerve cells and striated muscle cells, do not divide at all; others, like the fibroblasts that assist in healing wounds, grow on demand but are otherwise quiescent.

Still, every eukaryotic cell that divides must be ready to donate equal genetic material to two daughter cells. DNA synthesis in eukaryotes does not occur throughout the cell division cycle but is restricted to a part of it before cell division.

The relationship between eukaryotic DNA synthesis and cell division has been thoroughly analysed in cultures of mammalian cells that were all capable of growth and division. In contrast to bacteria, it was found, eukaryotic cells spend only a part of their time in DNA synthesis, and it is completed hours before cell division (mitosis). Thus a gap of time occurs after DNA synthesis and before cell division; another gap was found to occur after division and before the next round of DNA synthesis. This analysis led to the conclusion that the eukaryotic cell cycle consists of an M (mitotic) phase, a G₁ phase (the first gap), the S (DNA synthesis) phase, a G₂ phase (the second gap), and back to M. The phases between mitoses (G₁, S, and G₂) are known collectively as the interphase.

31

Many nondividing cells in tissues (for example, all quiescent fibroblasts) suspend the cycle after mitosis and just prior to DNA synthesis; such "resting" cells are said to have exited from the cell cycle and to be in the G_0 state.

It is possible to identify cells when they are in one of the three interphase stages of the cell cycle, by using a fluorescence-activated cell sorter (FACS) to measure their relative DNA content: a cell that is in G_1 (before DNA synthesis) has a defined amount x of DNA; during S (DNA replication), it has between x and $2x$, and when in G_2 (or M), it has $2x$ of DNA.

The stages of mitosis and cytokinesis in an animal cell are as follows:

(a) Interphase. The G_2 stage of interphase immediately precedes the beginning of mitosis. Chromosomal DNA has been replicated and bound to protein during the S phase, but chromosomes are not yet seen as distinct structures. The nucleolus is the only nuclear substructure that is visible under light microscope. In a diploid cell before DNA replication there are two morphologic chromosomes of each type, and the cell is said to be $2n$. In G_2 , after DNA replication, the cell is $4n$. There are four copies of each chromosomal DNA. Since the sister chromosomes have not yet separated from each other, they are called sister chromatids.

(b) Early prophase. Centrioles, each with a newly formed daughter centriole, begin moving toward opposite poles of the cell; the chromosomes can be seen as long threads. The nuclear membrane begins to disaggregate into small vesicles.

(c) Middle and late prophase. Chromosome condensation is completed; each visible chromosome structure is composed of two chromatids held together at their centromeres. Each chromatid contains one of the two newly replicated daughter DNA molecules. The microtubular spindle begins to radiate from the regions just adjacent to the centrioles, which are moving closer to their poles. Some spindle fibres reach from pole to pole; most go to chromatids and attach at kinetochores.

(d) Metaphase. The chromosomes move toward the equator of the cell, where they become aligned in the equatorial plane. The sister chromatids have not yet separated.

(e) Anaphase. The two sister chromatids separate into independent chromosomes. Each contains a centromere that is linked by a spindle fibre to one pole, to which it

128 26

moves. Thus one copy of each chromosome is donated to each daughter cell. Simultaneously, the cell elongates, as do the pole-to-pole spindles. Cytokinesis begins as the cleavage furrow starts to form.

(f) **Telophase.** New membranes form around the daughter nuclei; the chromosomes uncoil and become less distinct, the nucleolus becomes visible again, and the nuclear membrane forms around each daughter nucleus. Cytokinesis is nearly complete, and the spindle disappears as the microtubules and other fibres depolymerise. Throughout mitosis the "daughter" centriole at each pole grows until it is full-length. At telophase the duplication of each of the original centrioles is completed, and new daughter centrioles will be generated during the next interphase.

(g) **Interphase.** Upon the completion of cytokinesis, the cell enters the G_1 phase of the cell cycle and proceeds again around the cycle.

It will be appreciated that cell cycling is an extremely important cell process. Deviations from normal cell cycling can result in a number of medical disorders. Increased and/or unrestricted cell cycling may result in cancer. Reduced cell cycling may result in degenerative conditions. Use of the compound of the present invention may provide a means to treat such disorders and conditions.

Thus, the compound of the present invention may be suitable for use in the treatment of cell cycling disorders such as cancers, including hormone dependent and hormone independent cancers.

In addition, the compound of the present invention may be suitable for the treatment of cancers such as breast cancer, ovarian cancer, endometrial cancer, sarcomas, melanomas, prostate cancer, pancreatic cancer etc. and other solid tumours.

For some applications, cell cycling is inhibited and/or prevented and/or arrested, preferably wherein cell cycling is prevented and/or arrested. In one aspect cell cycling may be inhibited and/or prevented and/or arrested in the G_2/M phase. In one aspect cell cycling may be irreversibly prevented and/or inhibited and/or arrested, preferably wherein cell cycling is irreversibly prevented and/or arrested.

By the term "irreversibly prevented and/or inhibited and/or arrested" it is meant after application of a compound of the present invention, on removal of the compound the effects

32

of the compound, namely prevention and/or inhibition and/or arrest of cell cycling, are still observable. More particularly by the term "irreversibly prevented and/or inhibited and/or arrested" it is meant that when assayed in accordance with the cell cycling assay protocol presented herein, cells treated with a compound of interest show less growth after Stage 2 of the protocol than control cells. Details on this protocol are presented below.

Thus, the present invention provides compounds which: cause inhibition of growth of oestrogen receptor positive (ER+) and ER negative (ER-) breast cancer cells *in vitro* by preventing and/or inhibiting and/or arresting cell cycling; and/or cause regression of nitrosomethyl urea (NMU)-induced mammary tumours in intact animals (i.e. not ovariectomised), and/or prevent and/or inhibit and/or arrest cell cycling in cancer cells; and/or act *in vivo* by preventing and/or inhibiting and/or arresting cell cycling and/or act as a cell cycling agonist.

CELL CYCLING ASSAY (PROTOCOL 8)

Procedure

Stage 1

MCF-7 breast cancer cells are seeded into multi-well culture plates at a density of 105 cells/well. Cells were allowed to attach and grown until about 30% confluent when they are treated as follows:

Control - no treatment

Compound of Interest (COI) 20 μ M

Cells are grown for 6 days in growth medium containing the COI with changes of medium/COI every 3 days. At the end of this period cell numbers were counted using a Coulter cell counter.

Stage 2

After treatment of cells for a 6-day period with the COI cells are re-seeded at a density of 10⁴ cells/well. No further treatments are added. Cells are allowed to continue to grow for a further 6 days in the presence of growth medium. At the end of this period cell numbers are again counted.

129 137

CANCER

As indicated, the compounds of the present invention may be useful in the treatment of a cell cycling disorder. A particular cell cycling disorder is cancer.

Cancer remains a major cause of mortality in most Western countries. Cancer therapies developed so far have included blocking the action or synthesis of hormones to inhibit the growth of hormone-dependent tumours. However, more aggressive chemotherapy is currently employed for the treatment of hormone-independent tumours.

Hence, the development of a pharmaceutical for anti-cancer treatment of hormone dependent and/or hormone independent tumours, yet lacking some or all of the side-effects associated with chemotherapy, would represent a major therapeutic advance.

It is known that oestrogens undergo a number of hydroxylation and conjugation reactions after their synthesis. Until recently it was thought that such reactions were part of a metabolic process that ultimately rendered oestrogens water soluble and enhanced their elimination from the body. It is now evident that some hydroxy metabolites (e.g. 2-hydroxy and 16alpha-hydroxy) and conjugates (e.g. oestrone sulphate, E1S) are important in determining some of the complex actions that oestrogens have in the body.

Workers have investigated the formation of 2- and 16-hydroxylated oestrogens in relation to conditions that alter the risk of breast cancer. There is now evidence that factors which increase 2-hydroxylase activity are associated with a reduced cancer risk, while those increasing 16alpha-hydroxylation may enhance the risk of breast cancer. Further interest in the biological role of estrogen metabolites has been stimulated by the growing body of evidence that 2-methoxyestradiol is an endogenous metabolite with anti-mitotic properties. 2-methoxyestrone-3-O-sulphamate (2-MeOEZ) is formed from 2-hydroxy estradiol (2-OHE2) by catechol estrogen methyl transferase, an enzyme that is widely distributed throughout the body.

Workers have shown that *in vivo* 2-MeOEZ inhibits the growth of tumours arising from the subcutaneous injection of Meth A sarcoma, B16 melanoma or MDA-MB-435 estrogen receptor negative (ER-) breast cancer cells. It also inhibits endothelial cell proliferation and migration, and *in vitro* angiogenesis. It was suggested that the ability of 2-MeOEZ to

33

inhibit tumour growth *in vivo* may be due to its ability to inhibit tumour-induced angiogenesis rather than direct inhibition of the proliferation of tumour cells.

The mechanism by which 2-MeOE2 exerts its potent anti-mitogenic and anti-angiogenic effects is still being elucidated. There is evidence that at high concentrations it can inhibit microtubule polymerisation and act as a weak inhibitor of colchicine binding to tubulin. Recently, however, at concentrations that block mitosis, tubulin filaments in cells were not found to be depolymerised but to have an identical morphology to that seen after taxol treatment. It is possible, therefore, that like taxol, a drug that is used for breast and ovarian breast cancer therapy, 2-MeOE2 acts by stabilising microtubule dynamics.

While the identification of 2-MeOE2 as a new therapy for cancer represents an important advance, the bioavailability of orally administered oestrogens is poor. Furthermore, they can undergo extensive metabolism during their first pass through the liver. As part of a research programme to develop a steroid sulphatase inhibitor for breast cancer therapy, oestrone-3-O-sulphamate (EMATE) was identified as a potent active site-directed inhibitor. Unexpectedly, EMATE proved to possess potent oestrogenic properties with its oral uterotrophic activity in rats being a 100-times higher than that of estradiol. Its enhanced oestrogenicity is thought to result from its absorption by red blood cells (rbcs) which protects it from inactivation during its passage through the liver and which act as a reservoir for its slow release for a prolonged period of time. A number of A-ring modified analogues were synthesised and tested, including 2-methoxyoestrone-3-O-sulphamate. While this compound was equipotent with EMATE as a steroid sulphatase inhibitor, it was devoid of oestrogenicity.

We believe that the compound of the present invention provides a means for the treatment of cancers and, especially, breast cancer.

In addition or in the alternative the compound of the present invention may be useful in the blocking the growth of cancers including leukaemias and solid tumours such as breast, endometrium, prostate, ovary and pancreatic tumours.

THERAPY CONCERNING OESTROGEN

We believe that some of the compounds of the present invention may be useful in the control of oestrogen levels in the body - in particular in females. Thus, some of the compounds may be useful as providing a means of fertility control - such as an oral

120 136

contraceptive tablet, pill, solution or lozenge. Alternatively, the compound could be in the form of an implant or as a patch.

Thus, the compounds of the present invention may be useful in treating hormonal conditions associated with oestrogen.

In addition or in the alternative the compound of the present invention may be useful in treating hormonal conditions in addition to those associated with oestrogen. Hence, the compound of the present invention may also be capable of affecting hormonal activity and may also be capable of affecting an immune response.

NEURODEGENERATIVE DISEASES

We believe that some of the compounds of the present invention may be useful in the treatment of neurodegenerative diseases, and similar conditions.

By way of example, it is believed that STS inhibitors may be useful in the enhancing the memory function of patients suffering from illnesses such as amnesia, head injuries, Alzheimer's disease, epileptic dementia, presenile dementia, post traumatic dementia, senile dementia, vascular dementia and post-stroke dementia or individuals otherwise seeking memory enhancement.

TH1

We believe that some of the compounds of the present invention may be useful in TH1 implications.

By way of example, it is believed that the presence of STS inhibitors within the macrophage or other antigen presenting cells may lead to a decreased ability of sensitised T cells to mount a TH1 (high IL-2, IFN γ low IL-4) response. The normal regulatory influence of other steroids such as glucocorticoids would therefore predominate.

INFLAMMATORY CONDITIONS

We believe that some of the compounds of the present invention may be useful in treating inflammatory conditions - such as conditions associated with any one or more of:

34

autoimmunity, including for example, rheumatoid arthritis, type I and II diabetes, systemic lupus erythematosus, multiple sclerosis, myasthenia gravis, thyroiditis, vasculitis, ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease; skin disorders e.g. psoriasis and contact dermatitis; graft versus host disease; eczema; asthma and organ rejection following transplantation.

By way of example, it is believed that STS inhibitors may prevent the normal physiological effect of DHEA or related steroids on immune and/or inflammatory responses.

The compounds of the present invention may be useful in the manufacture of a medicament for revealing an endogenous glucocorticoid-like effect.

OTHER THERAPIES

It is also to be understood that the compound/composition of the present invention may have other important medical implications.

For example, the compound or composition of the present invention may be useful in the treatment of the disorders listed in WO-A-98/52880 - viz:

In addition, or in the alternative, the compound or composition of the present invention may be useful in the treatment of the disorders listed in WO-A-98/05635. For ease of reference, part of that list is now provided: cancer, inflammation or inflammatory disease, dermatological disorders, fever, cardiovascular effects, haemorrhage, coagulation and acute phase response, cachexia, anorexia, acute infection, HIV infection, shock states, graft-versus-host reactions, autoimmune disease, reperfusion injury, meningitis, migraine and aspirin-dependent anti-thrombosis; tumour growth, invasion and spread, angiogenesis, metastases, malignant ascites and malignant pleural effusion; cerebral ischaemia, ischaemic heart disease, osteoarthritis, rheumatoid arthritis, osteoporosis, asthma, multiple sclerosis, neurodegeneration, Alzheimer's disease, atherosclerosis, stroke, vasculitis, Crohn's disease and ulcerative colitis; periodontitis, gingivitis; psoriasis, atopic dermatitis, chronic ulcers, epidermolysis bullosa; corneal ulceration, retinopathy and surgical wound healing; rhinitis, allergic conjunctivitis, eczema, anaphylaxis; restenosis, congestive heart failure, endometriosis, atherosclerosis or endoclerosis.

In addition, or in the alternative, the compound or composition of the present invention may be useful in the treatment of disorders listed in WO-A-98/07859. For ease of reference, part of that list is now provided: cytokine and cell proliferation/differentiation

131 139

activity; immunosuppressant or immunostimulant activity (e.g. for treating immune deficiency, including infection with human immune deficiency virus; regulation of lymphocyte growth; treating cancer and many autoimmune diseases, and to prevent transplant rejection or induce tumour immunity); regulation of haematopoiesis, e.g. treatment of myeloid or lymphoid diseases; promoting growth of bone, cartilage, tendon, ligament and nerve tissue, e.g. for healing wounds, treatment of burns, ulcers and periodontal disease and neurodegeneration; inhibition or activation of follicle-stimulating hormone (modulation of fertility); chemotactic/chemokinetic activity (e.g. for mobilising specific cell types to sites of injury or infection); haemostatic and thrombolytic activity (e.g. for treating haemophilia and stroke); anti-inflammatory activity (for treating e.g. septic shock or Crohn's disease); as antimicrobials; modulators of e.g. metabolism or behaviour; as analgesics; treating specific deficiency disorders; in treatment of e.g. psoriasis, in human or veterinary medicine.

In addition, or in the alternative, the composition of the present invention may be useful in the treatment of disorders listed in WO-A-04/00985. For ease of reference, part of that list is now provided: macrophage inhibitory and/or T cell inhibitory activity and thus, anti-inflammatory activity, anti-immune activity, i.e. inhibitory effects against a cellular and/or humoral immune response, including a response not associated with inflammation; inhibit the ability of macrophages and T cells to adhere to extracellular matrix components and fibronectin, as well as up-regulated fas receptor expression in T cells; inhibit unwanted immune reaction and inflammation including arthritis, including rheumatoid arthritis, inflammation associated with hypersensitivity, allergic reactions, asthma, systemic lupus erythematosus, collagen diseases and other autoimmune diseases, inflammation associated with atherosclerosis, arteriosclerosis, atherosclerotic heart disease, reperfusion injury, cardiac arrest, myocardial infarction, vascular inflammatory disorders, respiratory distress syndrome or other cardiopulmonary diseases, inflammation associated with peptic ulcer, ulcerative colitis and other diseases of the gastrointestinal tract, hepatic fibrosis, liver cirrhosis or other hepatic diseases, thyroiditis or other glandular diseases, glomerulonephritis or other renal and urologic diseases, otitis or other oto-rhino-laryngological diseases, dermatitis or other dermal diseases, periodontal diseases or other dental diseases, orchitis or epididymo-orchitis, infertility, orchid trauma or other immune-related testicular diseases, placental dysfunction, placental insufficiency, habitual abortion, eclampsia, pre-eclampsia and other immune and/or inflammatory-related gynaecological diseases, posterior uveitis, intermediate uveitis, anterior uveitis, conjunctivitis, chorioretinitis, uveoretinitis, optic neuritis, intraocular inflammation, e.g. retinitis or cystoid macular oedema, sympathetic ophthalmia, scleritis, retinitis

pigmentosa, immune and inflammatory components of degenerative fondus diseases, inflammatory components of ocular trauma; ocular inflammation caused by infection, proliferative vitreo-retinopathies; acute ischaemic optic neuropathy, excessive scarring, e.g. following glaucoma filtration operation, immune and/or inflammation reaction against ocular implants and other immune and inflammatory-related ophthalmic diseases, inflammation associated with autoimmune diseases or conditions or disorders where, both in the central nervous system (CNS) or in any other organ, immune and/or inflammation suppression would be beneficial; Parkinson's disease, complication and/or side effects from treatment of Parkinson's disease, AIDS-related dementia complex HIV-related encephalopathy, Devic's disease, Sydenham chorea, Alzheimer's disease and other degenerative diseases, conditions or disorders of the CNS, inflammatory components of stokes, post-polio syndrome; immune and inflammatory components of psychiatric disorders; myelitis, encephalitis, subacute sclerosing pan-encephalitis, encephalomyelitis, acute neuropathy, subacute neuropathy, chronic neuropathy, Guillain-Barre syndrome, Sydenham chorea, myasthenia gravis, pseudo-tumour cerebri, Down's Syndrome, Huntington's disease, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, inflammatory components of CNS compression or CNS trauma or infections of the CNS, inflammatory components of muscular atrophies and dystrophies, and immune and inflammatory related diseases, conditions or disorders of the central and peripheral nervous systems, post-traumatic inflammation, septic shock, infectious diseases, inflammatory complications or side effects of surgery, bone marrow transplantation or other transplantation complications and/or side effects, inflammatory and/or immune complications and side effects of gene therapy, e.g. due to infection with a viral carrier, or inflammation associated with AIDS, to suppress or inhibit a humoral and/or cellular immune response, to treat or ameliorate monocyte or leukocyte proliferative diseases, e.g. leukaemia, by reducing the amount of monocytes or lymphocytes, for the prevention and/or treatment of graft rejection in cases of transplantation of natural or artificial cells, tissue and organs such as cornea, bone marrow, organs, lenses, pacemakers, natural or artificial skin tissue.

COMPOUND PREPARATION

The compounds of the present invention may be prepared by reacting an appropriate alcohol with a suitable chloride. By way of example, the sulphamate compounds of the present invention may be prepared by reacting an appropriate alcohol with a suitable sulfamoyl chloride, of the formula $R_1R_2NSO_2Cl$.

Typical conditions for carrying out the reaction are as follows.

132 198

Sodium hydride and a sulfamoyl chloride are added to a stirred solution of the alcohol in anhydrous dimethyl formamide at 0°C. Subsequently, the reaction is allowed to warm to room temperature whereupon stirring is continued for a further 24 hours. The reaction mixture is poured onto a cold saturated solution of sodium bicarbonate and the resulting aqueous phase is extracted with dichloromethane. The combined organic extracts are dried over anhydrous $MgSO_4$. Filtration followed by solvent evaporation in vacuo and co-evaporated with toluene affords a crude residue which is further purified by flash chromatography.

Preferably, the alcohol is derivatised, as appropriate, prior to reaction with the sulfamoyl chloride. Where necessary, functional groups in the alcohol may be protected in known manner and the protecting group or groups removed at the end of the reaction.

Preferably, the sulphamate compounds are prepared according to the teachings of Page *et al* (1990 Tetrahedron 48; 2059-2063).

SUMMARY

In summation, the present invention provides novel compositions suitable for oral contraception, hormone replacement therapy, the inhibition of E1-STS as well as other therapeutic applications.

EXAMPLES

The present invention will now be described only by way of example with reference to the accompanying drawings in which:-

Figure 1 presents a flow chart;

Figure 2 presents a graph;

Figure 3 presents a graph;

Figure 5 presents a graph;

Figure 6 presents a graph;

Figure 7 presents graphs;

Figure 8 presents graphs;

Figure 9 presents a graph;

Figure 10 presents a graph;

36

Figure 11 presents graphs.

The following compound(s) according to the present invention were prepared

Preparation of oestrone-3-sulphamate

Sodium hydride (80% dispersion; 2 eq) and sulphonyl chloride (2 eq) were added to a stirred solution of oestrone (1 eq) in anhydrous dimethyl formamide at 0°C. Subsequently, the reaction was allowed to warm to room temperature whereupon stirring was continued for a further 24 hours.

The reaction mixture was poured onto a cold saturated solution of sodium bicarbonate and the resulting aqueous phase was extracted with dichloromethane. The combined organic extracts were dried over anhydrous $MgSO_4$. Filtration followed solvent evaporation in vacuo and co-evaporation with toluene afforded a crude residue which is further purified by flash chromatography.

Analysis showed the following data:

δ^1H (270MHz; CD_3OD): 0.91 (s, 3H, $C_{17}-Me$), 1.40-2.55 (series of m, 13H), 2.90-2.92 (m, 2H), 7.04 (br d, 2H, $J=10.44Hz$); 7.33 (br d, 1H, $J=8.42Hz$).

$\delta^{13}C$ (87.8MHz; CD_3OD): 14.53 (q, $C_{17}-Me$), 22.80 (t), 27.24 (t), 27.73 (t), 30.66 (t), 33.05 (t), 37.01 (t), 39.78 (d), 45.73 (s, C_{18}), 51.85 (d), 120.78 (d), 123.54 (d), 127.89 (d), 139.83 (s), 150.27 (s), 223.87 (s, $C=O$).

m/z (%): 349 (9) (m^+), 270 (100), 213 (26), 185 (45), 172 (31), 159 (21), 146 (36), 91 (33), 69 (37), 57 (73), 43 (56), 29 (24).

Microanalysis:

	C	H	N
Expected:	61.67%	6.63%	4.01%
Found:	61.90%	6.68%	3.96%

Studies with Oestradiol Sulphamate (ENATE)

133 144

Technology

Oestradiol Sulfamate (EMATE or J695) was investigated with respect to its hormonal properties *in vitro* and *in vivo*. *In vitro* studies included the evaluation of its specific binding to oestrogen receptors using cytosolic preparations of uterine tissue of rats and mice and MCF-7 tumor cells. *In vivo* studies were performed on several animal species including intact and ovariectomised rats and cynomolgus monkeys. These species served for detailed pharmacodynamic and pharmacokinetic studies at parenteral and oral administration of the compound.

Studies in the human were performed with oral administration of the compound in postmenopausal women. Several doses at single and multiple administration were evaluated. *In vitro* studies were performed with solutions in oily vehicles for parenteral administration. Oral treatment was performed with suspensions of crystalline EMATE in aqueous vehicles. Clinical studies were performed with amorphous drug substance galenically formulated with a mixture of conventional ingredients as capsules or tablets.

In vitro studies revealed that EMATE *per se* has no affinity to the estrogen receptor. There was no specific binding of radioactively labelled EMATE to the estrogen receptor of mice, rats, and the human. A huge excess of EMATE was unable to displace specifically bound radioactively labelled Oestradiol. Both findings are strong evidence that EMATE exerts oestrogenic effects after transformation from an hormonally inactive into an hormonally active molecule. The prodrug EMATE, or its main metabolite Oestrone Sulfamate, is hydrolysed to sulfamic acid and the natural oestrogenic hormones Oestradiol and Oestrone, respectively (Fig. 1).

Due to preferential transport in erythrocytes the prodrug EMATE has peculiar pharmacokinetic properties. EMATE does not circulate in the plasma fraction of blood in as do conventional oestrogens, but an amount of 98-99% of EMATE circulates in the erythrocyte compartment. This erythrocyte transport leads to much reduced hepatic hormone action and extraction at first liver passage and to long lasting release of the EMATE from erythrocytes which function as a depot.

Advantages of EMATE with respect to the oral oestrogen therapy:

- Reduction of individual variation of blood levels (Fig. 2 and 3):

The gold standard of oral oestrogen therapy is ethinyl estradiol. This compound does not

37

lead to well defined blood levels (Fig.4). The disadvantage of this individual variation is the necessity to administer higher doses than necessary in most individuals in order to achieve a acceptable rate of successful treatments.

• **Reduction of oestrogen dose and load of active metabolites which are suspected to promote the growth of some hormone dependent tumours:**

The conventional oral oestrogen replacement therapy with the so called conjugated oestrogens, oestradiol, oestradiol valerate or oestrone sulfate leads to a large pool of oestrone sulfate in the circulation. The hydrolysis of some of this metabolite leads to the therapeutically relevant blood levels of oestrone and oestradiol. However, oestrone sulfate has the disadvantage that it is particularly actively hydrolysed by sulfatase in breast tumour tissue which may generate potentially growth promoting oestrogens. EMATE, in relation to its dose, leads to higher and much longer lasting oestradiol levels than Oestradiol Valerate at the same dose (Fig. 6, 7). The downstream arising metabolite oestrone sulfate stays by at least factor 10 lower than under Oestradiol Valerate treatment (Fig. 5).

• **Reduction of hepatic estrogenic effects:**

A high dose of oestrogen is essential for conventional oral oestrogen therapy in order to cope with the substantial hepatic loss of hormone. The drawback of this high dose is an unfavourable effect on oestrogen regulated hepatic functions. These include effect on factors of the hemostatic system and related thromboembolic disorders, elevation of angiotensinogen in the circulation and subsequent effects on adrenal, renal, and vascular functions, changes of bile secretion, and lipid metabolism. The liver bypassing mechanism of action of EMATE and the ultralow dose strategy according to this invention avoids the corresponding undesired effects of climacteric oestrogen treatment. Orally administered EMATE reaches the erythrocyte pool to almost 100%. Far more than 50% of this prodrug is appearing as oestrone and oestradiol in the circulation (Fig. 11). This permits a much reduced dose compared to conventional oral oestrogen therapy per time unit.

• **Achievement of constant blood levels:**

Blood levels of oestrogens fluctuate from day to day under conventional daily oral oestrogen treatment (Fig. 5, 6, 7) whereas EMATE leads to very constant, long lasting blood levels (Fig. 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10). Figure 9 shows almost constant oestrone sulfate levels which reflect the upstream generation of oestradiol and oestrone after 14 days of

134
JPC

treatment with EMATE at a very low dose of 100µg per day in the wash out phase over 144 hours.

• **Effects of Oestradiol Sulfamate in oestrogen deficient bones:**

Constant and well defined blood levels as described here cannot be achieved with the established oral oestrogen therapy. EMATE allows a precise osteoprotective treatment just below the threshold which leads to endometrial growth. The absence of endometrial effects permits the use EMATE without the simultaneous administration of progestins.

Improvements which can be reached with an oestrogen only preparation for oestrogen replacement therapy based on EMATE

• **Bleeding free therapy:**

The rationale of a combined oestrogen/progestin treatment is the control of endometrial proliferation which represents a risk of endometrial cancer development. The price for this protective essential effect is quite substantial. Both the cyclic and the continuous combined treatment lead to uterine bleedings which are probably the most important reason to discontinue the oestrogen replacement therapy.

• **Effects on wellbeing:**

Another established negative aspect of this treatment is an impairment of the positive effects which oestrogens exert on the wellbeing of climacteric women.

• **Breast**

Questions are raised by the proliferative effects of progestins in the breast in analogy to the effects of progesterone in pregnancy. The concern about these effects is related to their potential role in the development of mammary cancer.

• **Metabolic side effects:**

Progestins, as progesterone itself, have important effects on a wide spectrum of metabolic functions. These include the secretion of insulin and insulin resistance, which is reduced, and effects on the lipid metabolism. Corresponding effects represent undesired effects in the context of oestrogen replacement therapy.

Significance of oestrogen replacement therapy:

Women have a constant loss of bone mass after the cessation of ovarian oestrogen secretion after the menopause. Due to the fact that life expectancy of women is very high and still increasing it is mandatory to prevent bone loss and the resulting skeletal fragility. This is by far the most important risk factor for disability and also for morbidity, and mortality at high age.

All publications and patents mentioned in the above specification are herein incorporated by reference.

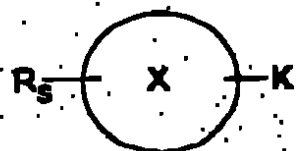
Various modifications and variations of the present invention will be apparent to those skilled in the art without departing from the scope and spirit of the invention. Although the invention has been described in connection with specific preferred embodiments, it should be understood that the invention as claimed should not be unduly limited to such specific embodiments. Indeed, various modifications of the described modes for carrying out the invention which are obvious to those skilled in chemistry, biology or related fields are intended to be within the scope of the following claims.

135 #43

CLAIMS

1. A pharmaceutical composition comprising

(i) a compound of Formula (I)



Formula I

wherein: X is a hydrocarbyl ring having at least 4 atoms in the ring; K is a hydrocarbyl group; R_s is a sulphamate group;

(ii) optionally admixed with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, diluent, excipient or adjuvant,

wherein the compound is present in an amount to provide a dosage of no greater than 200 µg/day.

2. A pharmaceutical composition according to claim 1 wherein the compound is present in an amount to provide a dosage of from 10 to 200 µg/day.

3. A pharmaceutical composition according to claim 1 or 2 wherein the compound is present in an amount to provide a dosage of from 50 to 200 µg/day.

4. A pharmaceutical composition according to claim 1 or 2 wherein the compound is present in an amount to provide a dosage of from 20 to 50 µg/day.

5. A pharmaceutical composition according to claim 1 wherein the compound is present in an amount no greater than 200 µg/dose.

6. A pharmaceutical composition according to claim 1 wherein the compound is present in an amount no greater than 1 mg/dose.

7. A pharmaceutical composition according to claim 1 wherein the compound is present in an amount no greater than 4 mg/dose.

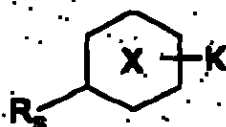
8. A pharmaceutical composition according to any one of the preceding claims wherein X in combination with K mimics a steroidal structure.

8. A pharmaceutical composition according to any one of the preceding claims wherein K is a cyclic group;

10. A pharmaceutical composition according to any one of the preceding claims wherein X is a six-membered ring.

11. A pharmaceutical composition according to any one of the preceding claims wherein the ring X has six carbon atoms in the ring.

12. A pharmaceutical composition according to any one of the preceding claims wherein the compound is of Formula II:



Formula II

wherein each of R_s, X and K are as defined in claim 1.

13. A pharmaceutical composition according to any one of the preceding claims wherein X in combination with K is a steroidal ring structure.

14. A pharmaceutical composition according to any one of the preceding claims wherein group K and ring X are a steroid ring structure or a substituted derivative thereof;

15. A pharmaceutical composition according to claim 14 wherein the R_s group is at position 3 of the ring X.

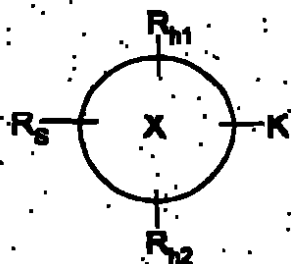
16. A pharmaceutical composition according to any one of the preceding claims wherein R_s is a sulphamate group.

17. A pharmaceutical composition according to any one of the preceding claims wherein the compound is of Formula III

55

126 144

Formula (I)



wherein X, K and Rs are as defined in claim 1; and wherein Rh1 is an optional halo group; Rh2 is an optional halo group; at least one of Rh1 and Rh2 is present

18. A pharmaceutical composition according to claim 17 wherein Rh1 is at position 2 of the ring X.

19. A pharmaceutical composition according to claim 17 or 18 wherein Rh2 is at position 4 of the ring X.

20. A composition according to any one of the preceding claims for use in medicine.

21. Use of a composition according to any one of claims 1 to 19 in the manufacture of a medicament for use in oral contraception.

22. Use of a composition according to any one of claims 1 to 19 in the manufacture of a medicament for use in hormone replacement therapy.

23. Use of a composition according to any one of claims 1 to 19 in the manufacture of a medicament for use in the therapy of a condition or disease associated with STS.

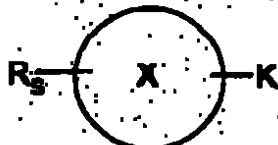
24. Use of a composition according to any one of claims 1 to 19 in the manufacture of a medicament for use in the therapy of a condition or disease associated with adverse STS levels.

40

56

ABSTRACT**COMPOSITION**

5 There is provided a pharmaceutical composition comprising (i) a compound of the formula



10 wherein: X is a hydrocarbyl ring having at least 4 atoms in the ring; K is a hydrocarbyl group; Rs is a sulphamate group; (ii) optionally admixed with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, diluent, excipient or adjuvant, wherein the compound is present in an amount to provide a dosage of no greater than 200 µg/day.

**Main routes of biotransformation of estradiol valerate vs
estradiol sulfamate (J995)**

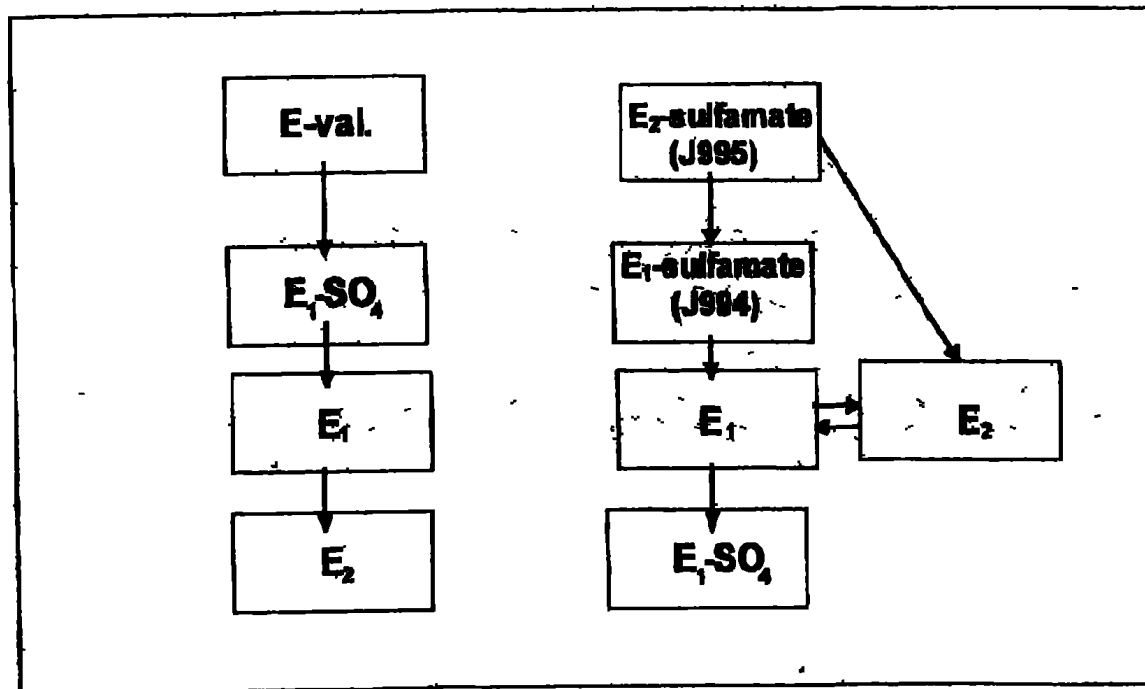
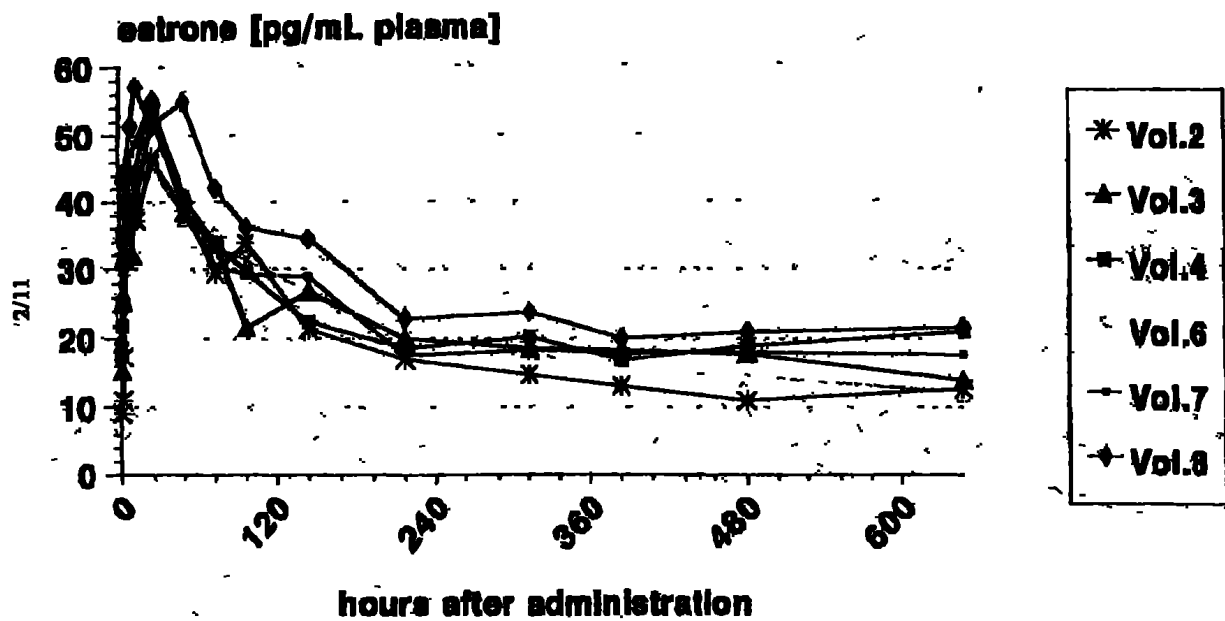


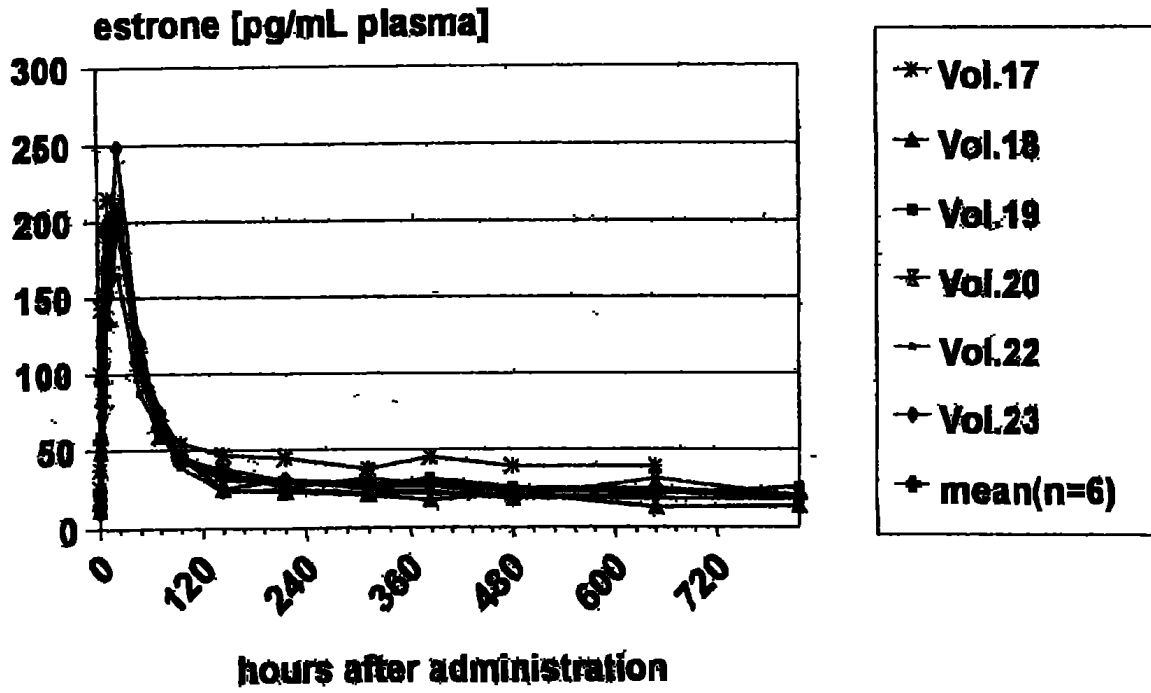
Fig 1

137

**Cours of plasma strone in m nopausal women (n=6)
after a single oral dose of
1mg of Estradiol Sulfamate (J995)**



Course of plasma estrone in menopausal women (n=6)
after a single oral dose of
4mg of Estradiol Sulfamate (J995)



10/1999

Individual variation in plasma levels after a single oral dose (50µg) of ethinylestradiol given under rigidly standardized conditions

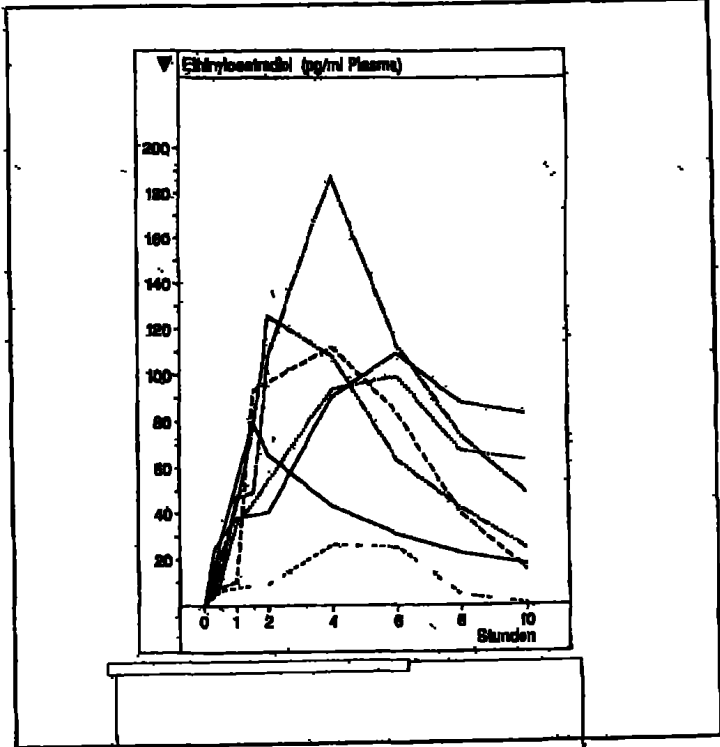


Fig 4

Goldzieher JW et al, Am Obst Gyn 160/5 (1989) 1260-1264

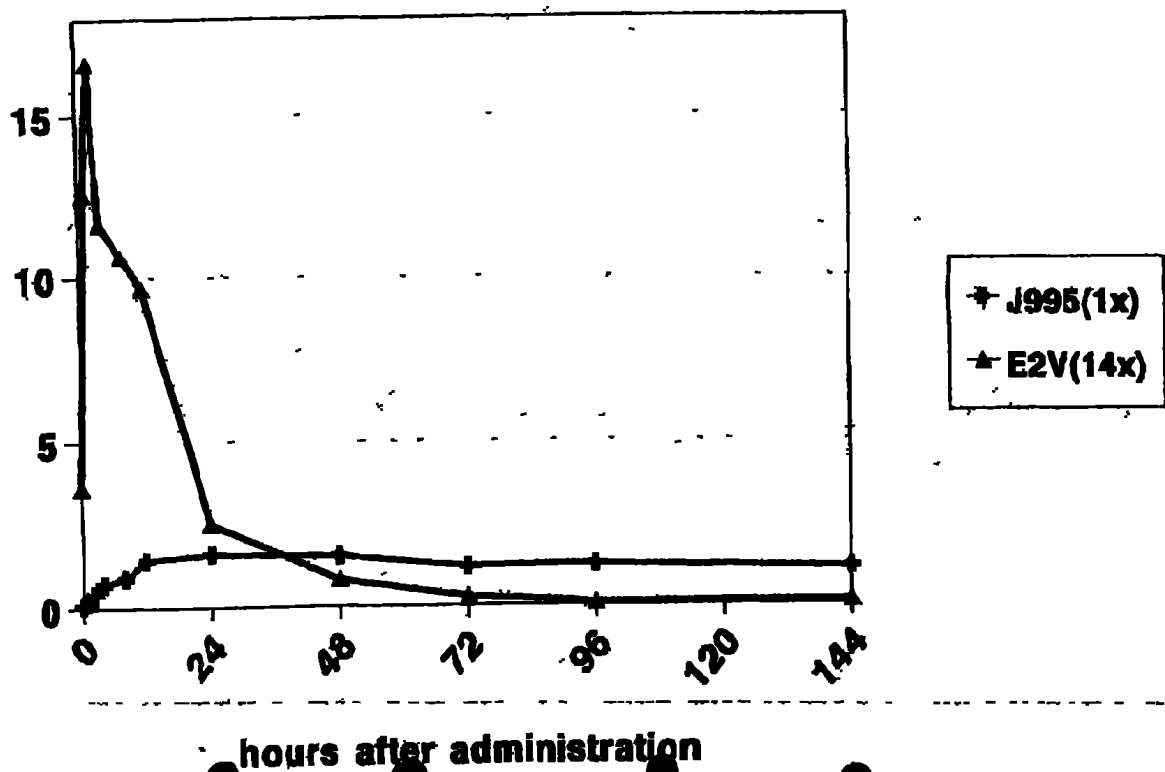
11/1999

140

14/1 14/1

Plasma estrone sulfate in men pausal women:
Comparison between a single oral dose of 2 mg Estradiol
Sulfamate (J995) and multiple oral doses of 2 mg Estradiol
Valerate (E₂V)

E1S (ng/ml plasma)



Recall



Course of plasma estrone and estradiol in men pausal women (n=6) after a single oral dose of 2mg Estradiol sulfamate (J995) and 2mg Estradiol valerate (E₂V)

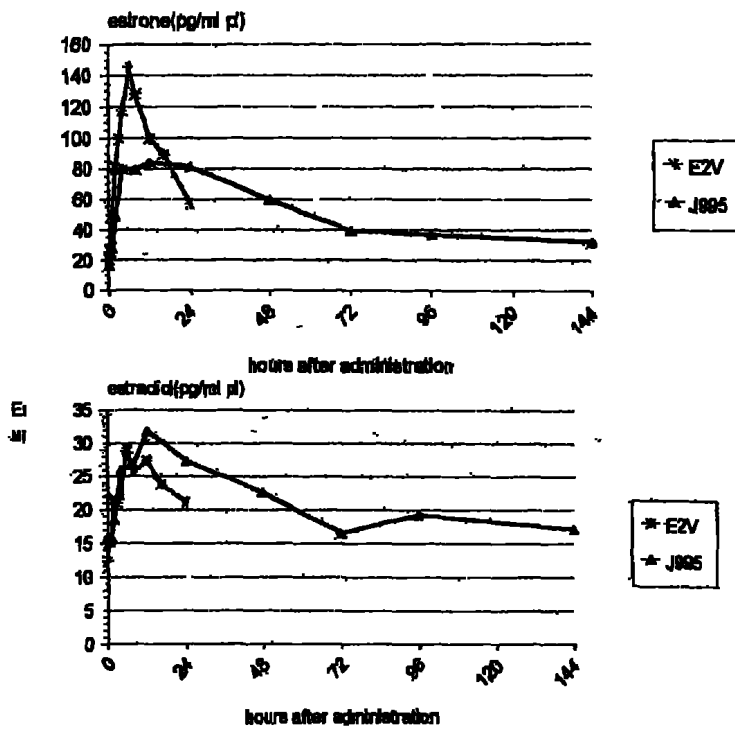


Fig 7

17/1999

143

Page 08

To THE PATENT OFFICE

From-0200024202

18 04

Received 14-Jan-00

7/11

Page 08

To THE PATENT OFFICE

From-0200024202

18 04

Received 14-Jan-00

8/11

Course of plasma estrone and estradiol in menopausal women (n=6) after a single oral dose of placebo, 0.5mg, 1mg, 2mg, 4mg, 8mg of Estradiol Sulfamate (J995)

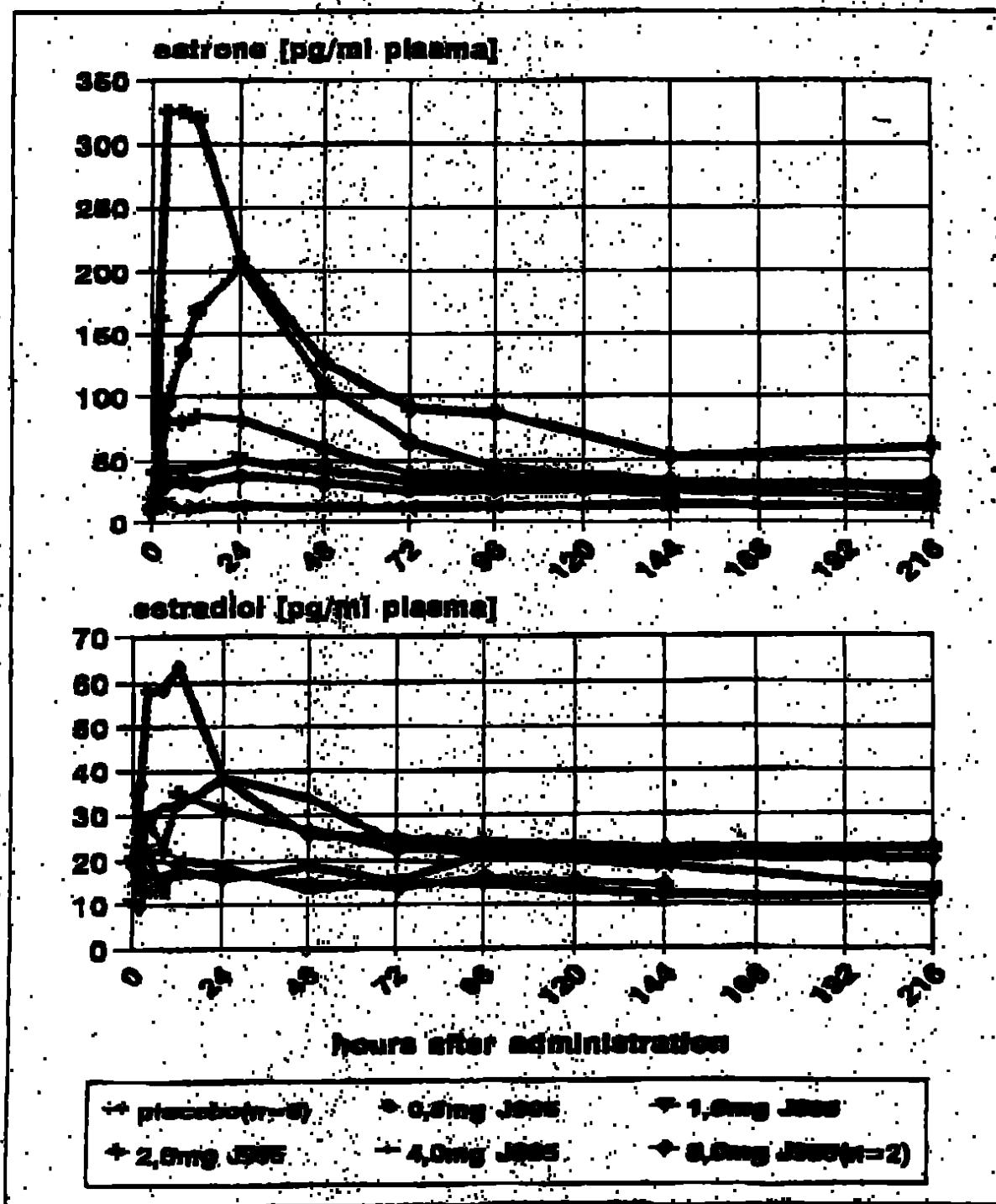


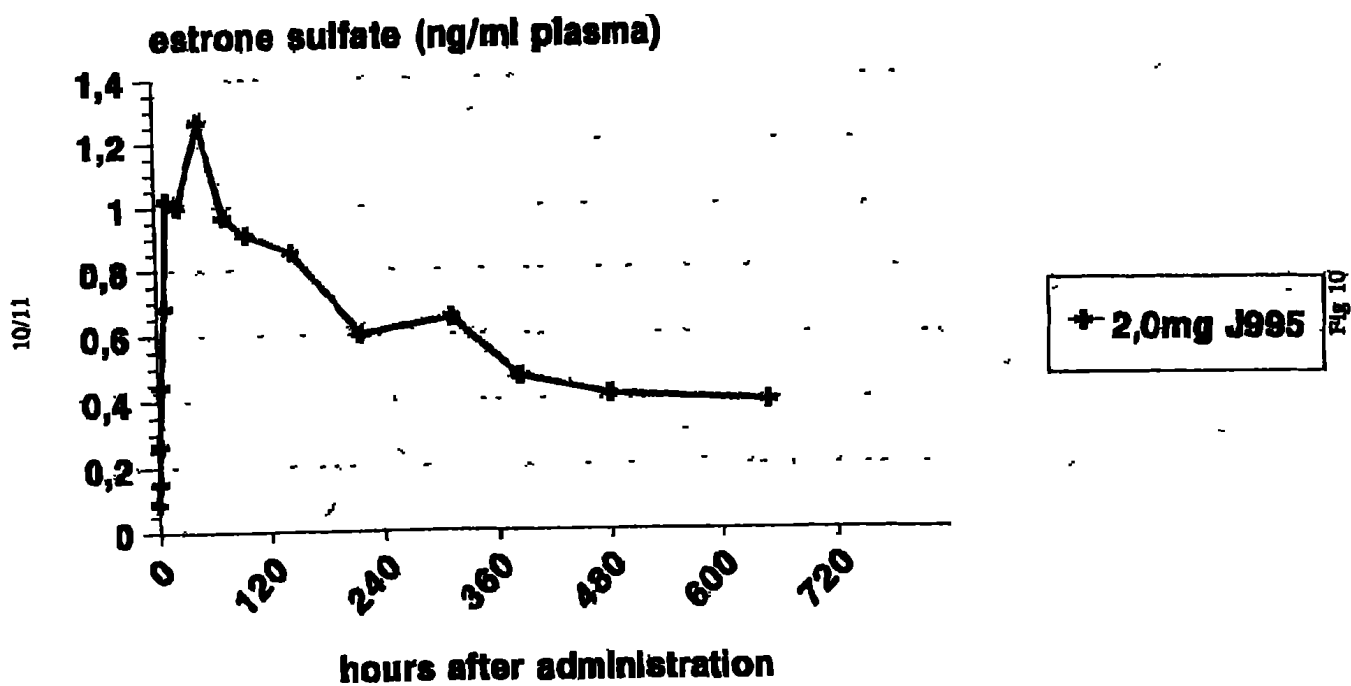
Fig 8

79

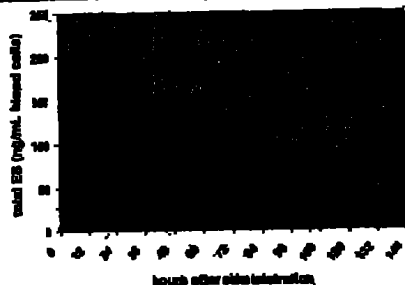


146

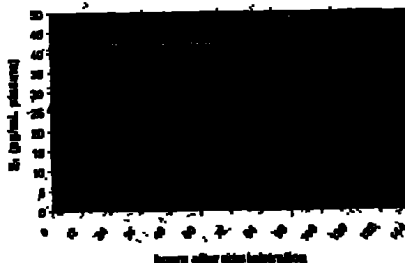
Course of plasma estrone sulfate in men pausal women (n=6)
after single oral doses of
2mg of Estradiol Sulfamate(J995)



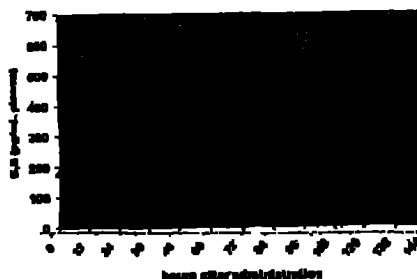
Estimation of oral bioavailability of estradiol sulfamate (J995) at a single oral dose of 0.5 mg



Erythrocyte conc. Ca. 200 ng/mL erythrocytes/ca
100µg/L blood
≈ 500 µg/ 5L blood



Clearance of E₁ 40 pg/ml over 5 days
*calculated 40 ng/l over 5 days
1870 l x 40 ng/l /day
374 µg/ 5 days



Clearance of E₁S 700 pg/ml over 5 days
*calculated 700 ng/l over 5 days
110 l x 700 ng/l /day
385 µg/ 5 days

*Longcope C and Williams KH
J Clin Endocrinol Metab 38 (1974) 602-607

1999

Fig 11

11/11

11-147

148 - 455

OFICINA DE PATENTES

OFICINA DE PATENTES
Concept House
Cardiff Road-Newport-South Wales
NP10 8QQ

Yo, el suscrito, un funcionario debidamente autorizado de acuerdo con la Sección 74(1) y (4) del Acto de Reglamentación y Contratación Exterior de 1994, para firmar y expedir certificados en nombre del Contralor General, certifico por medio del presente que la anexa a la presente es fiel copia de los documentos que se presentaron originalmente con la solicitud de patente aquí identificada.

De acuerdo con las Normas de 1982 de Patentes (Registro de Compañías), si una compañía nombrada en este certificado y cualquier documento adjunto se ha registrado bajo la Ley de Compañías de 1980 con el mismo nombre de aquel con el que estuvo registrada inmediatamente antes del registro, reserva para la sustitución o inclusión la última parte del nombre de las palabras "compañía pública limitada" o sus equivalentes en galés, las referencias al nombre de la compañía en este certificado y cualquier documento anexo será tratado como referencia al nombre con el cual quedó así vuelta a registrar.

De acuerdo con las reglas, las palabras "compañía limitada pública" pueden ser reemplazadas por p.l.c., plc, P.L.C. o PLC.

El nuevo registro bajo la Ley de Sociedades no constituye una nueva entidad legal sino simplemente somete a la compañía a ciertas normas legales adicionales.

Firmado(ilegible)
Fecha: Enero 30 del 2001

570

149 56

OFICINA DE PATENTES

Solicitud de otorgamiento de patente 14 de Enero de 2000

1. Su referencia P007942GBR DAA

2. Solicitud de Patente No.: 0002115.4 ENERO 28 DE 2000

3. Nombre completo, dirección y código postal de cada solicitante:

STERIX LIMITED

SCHERING AKTIENGESELLSCHAFT

Magdalen Centre

Mullerstrasse 178

Robert Robinson Avenue

13342 Berlin

The Oxford Science Park

Alemania

Oxford

Si el solicitante es persona jurídica, dar el país/ estado de su constitución:

INGLATERRA.

y

ALEMANIA

4. Título de la invención: COMPOSICION

5. Nombre de su agente(si tiene uno) D YOUNG & CO

21 NEW FETTER LANE

LONDON

EC4A 1DA

Número ADP de patentes (si tiene uno) 59006

6. Si declara prioridad de una o más solicitudes de patente anteriores, dar el país y fecha de presentación de cada una de las solicitudes anteriores y (si lo sabe) el número de cada solicitud: (EN BLANCO).

7. Si esta solicitud se divide o de otra manera se deriva de una solicitud anterior en el Reino Unido, dar el número y fecha de presentación de la solicitud anterior: (EN BLANCO).

8. Se requiere una declaración del inventor y del derecho a otorgar una patente para dar soporte a esta solicitud? SI

(Conteste "Si" en caso de que:

a) El solicitante nombrado en la parte 3 no es el inventor o

b) existe un invento que no se ha nombrado como solicitante, o

c) cualquier solicitante nombrado es una persona jurídica.

Ver nota (d):

9. Indique el número de hojas para cualquiera de los siguientes items que Ud. esté llenando con este formato. No cuente copias del mismo documento:

Hojas de continuación de este formato:- Ninguna

53

150 ~~137~~

Descripción:	53 páginas
Reivindicaciones:	3
Extracto	.1
Dibujos:	.11

10. Si también esta presentando uno de los siguientes indique cuántos contra cada item:

Documento de prioridad-	Ninguno
Traducciones de documentos de prioridad	Ninguno
Extracto de inventoría y derecho de otorgar patente	Ninguno
Solicitud de examen preliminar y búsqueda:	Ninguno
Solicitud de examen sustantivo	Ninguno
Cualquier otro documento:	Ninguno

11. Solicitamos el otorgamiento de patente con base en esta solicitud

Firma ilegible D YOUNG & CO- Fecha: 28/01/2000

Agentes para solicitantes

12. Nombre y un numero de teléfono diurno de la persona a contactar en el Reino D Alcock-
023 8063 4816

PREVENCION

Luego que una solicitud de patente ha sido presentada, el Contralor de la Oficina de Patentes considerará si la publicación o comunicación de la invención debe ser prohibida o restringida según la sección 22 de la Ley de Patentes de 1977. Ud será informado si es necesario prohibir o restringir su invención de esta manera. Además, si Ud. vive en el Reino Unido, la Sección 23 de la Ley de Patentes de 1977 le impide solicitar una patente en el exterior sin primero obtener permiso escrito de la Oficina de Patentes a menos que se haya presentado una solicitud por lo menos con 6 semanas de anterioridad en el Reino Unido para patente para la misma invención y no se ha dado orden prohibiendo la publicación o comunicación, o cualquier orden en tal sentido ha sido revocada

NOTAS

a) Si usted necesita ayuda para llenar este formato o tiene preguntas, favor contactar a la Oficina de Patentes en el 0645 500505.

b) Escriba sus respuestas en letras mayúsculas usando tinta negra o Ud. puede hacerlo a máquina.

SK

151 150

c) Si no hay espacio suficiente para todos los detalles correspondientes en cualquier parte de este formato, favor continuar en hoja de papel separada y escriba "ver hoja a continuación" en las partes pertinentes.

Cualquier hoja adicional debe agregarse a este formato.

d) Si Ud. ha contestado "Si" necesita llenar el Formato de Patentes 7/77.

e) Una vez que haya llenado el formato usted debe recordar firmarlo y ponerle la fecha.

f) Para detalles de derechos y formas de pago favor contactar la Oficina de Patentes.

151

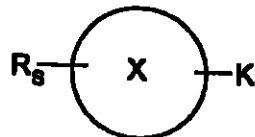
REIVINDICACIONES

1. Una composición farmacéutica que comprende

(i) un compuesto de la fórmula (I)

5

(I) a compound of Formula (I)



Formula I

en la cual: X es un anillo de hidrocarbilo con por lo menos 4 átomos en el
anillo; K es un grupo hidrocarbilo; Rs es un grupo sulfamato;

10

(ii) optativamente mezclado con un vehículo, diluyente, excipiente o
adyuvante farmacéuticamente aceptable,

donde el compuesto está presente en una cantidad que produce una dosis
de no más de 200 mg/día.

15

2. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con la reivindicación 1 en la
cual el compuesto está presente en una cantidad que produce una
dosis de 10 a 200 mg/día.

20

3. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con la reivindicación 1 ó 2
en la cual el compuesto está presente en una cantidad que produce una
dosis de 50 a 200 mg/día.

25

4. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con la reivindicación 1 ó 2
en la cual el compuesto está presente en una cantidad que produce una
dosis de 20 a 50 mg/día.

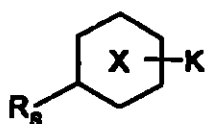
5. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con la reivindicación 1 en la cual el compuesto está presente en una cantidad que produce una dosis de no más de 200 mg/día.
- 5 6. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con la reivindicación 1 en la cual el compuesto está presente en una cantidad que produce una dosis de no más de 1 mg/dosis.
- 10 7. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con la reivindicación 1 en la cual el compuesto está presente en una cantidad que produce una dosis de no más de 4 mg/dosis.
- 15 8. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con cualquiera de las reivindicaciones precedentes, en la cual X en combinación con K imita una estructura esteroide.
9. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con cualquiera de las reivindicaciones precedentes, en la cual K es un grupo cíclico.
- 20 10. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con cualquiera de las reivindicaciones precedentes, en la cual X es un anillo de seis miembros.

154 16

11. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con cualquiera de las reivindicaciones precedentes, en la cual el anillo X tiene seis átomos de carbono en el anillo.

5 12. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con cualquiera de las reivindicaciones precedentes, en la cual el compuesto es de la Fórmula II.

10



Formula II

en la cual cada uno de R₈, X y K son como se los definiera en la reivindicación 1.

15

13. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con cualquiera de las reivindicaciones precedentes, en la cual X en combinación con K es una estructura de anillo esteroide.

20

14. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con cualquiera de las reivindicaciones precedentes, en la cual el grupo K y el anillo X constituyen una estructura de anillo esteroide o un derivado sustituido de la misma.

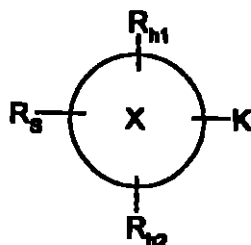
58

15. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con la reivindicación 14 en la cual el grupo Rs está en la posición 3 del anillo X.

18. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con cualquiera de las reivindicaciones precedentes, en la cual Rs es un grupo sulfamato.

17. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con cualquiera de las reivindicaciones precedentes, en la cual el compuesto es de la fórmula III

10



Formula III

15 en la cual X, K y Rs son como se los definiera en la reivindicación 1, y donde Rh1 es un grupo halo optativo; Rh2 es un grupo halo optativo; por lo menos uno de Rh1 y Rh2 está presente.

18. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con la reivindicación 17, en la cual Rh1 está en la posición 2 del anillo X.

19. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con la reivindicación 17 ó 18 en la cual Rh2 está presente en la posición 4 del anillo X.

st

156 163

20. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con cualquiera de las reivindicaciones precedentes para usar en medicina.
21. El uso de una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con cualquiera de las
5 reivindicaciones 1 a 19 en la elaboración de un medicamento para usar en la anticoncepción oral.
22. El uso de una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con cualquiera de las reivindicaciones 1 a 19 en la elaboración de un medicamento para usar en
10 terapia de reemplazo hormonal.
23. El uso de una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con cualquiera de las reivindicaciones 1 a 19 en la elaboración de un medicamento para la terapia de reemplazo hormonal para la protección ósea sin estimulación del
15 endometrio.
24. El uso de una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con cualquiera de las reivindicaciones 1 a 19 en la elaboración de un medicamento para usar en la terapia de un trastorno o enfermedad asociada con STS.
20
25. El uso de una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con cualquiera de las reivindicaciones 1 a 19 en la elaboración de un medicamento para usar en la terapia de un trastorno o enfermedad asociada con niveles adversos de STS.

60



COLUMBIA



INVESTOR IN PEOPLE

164
157

The Patent Office
Concept House
Cardiff Road
Newport
South Wales
NP10 8QQ

I, the undersigned, being an officer duly authorised in accordance with Section 74(1) and (4) of the Deregulation & Contracting Out Act 1994, to sign and issue certificates on behalf of the Comptroller-General, hereby certify that annexed hereto is a true copy of the documents as originally filed in connection with the patent application identified therein.

In accordance with the Patents (Companies Re-registration) Rules 1982, if a company named in this certificate and any accompanying documents has re-registered under the Companies Act 1980 with the same name as that with which it was registered immediately before re-registration save for the substitution as, or inclusion as, the last part of the name of the words "public limited company" or their equivalents in Welsh, references to the name of the company in this certificate and any accompanying documents shall be treated as references to the name with which it is so re-registered.

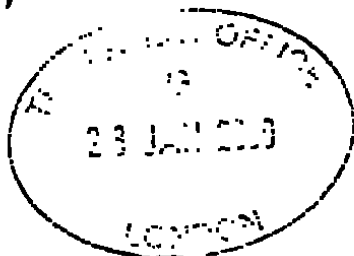
In accordance with the rules, the words "public limited company" may be replaced by p.l.c., plc, P.L.C. or PLC.

Re-registration under the Companies Act does not constitute a new legal entity but merely subjects the company to certain additional company law rules.

Signed *Andrew Grey*

Dated 30 January 2001

✓



The
Patent
Office

158
J.B.
JCO

Request for a grant of a patent

(See the notes on the back of this form. You can also get an explanatory leaflet from the Patent Office to help you fill in this form)

The Patent Office

Cardiff Road
Newport
Gwent NP9 1RH

1.	Your reference	P007942GBR DAA	
2.	Patent appl (The Patent)	0002115.4	28 JAN 2000
3.	Full name, address and postcode of the or of each applicant (underline all surnames)	Sterix Limited Magdalen Centre Robert Robinson Avenue The Oxford Science Park Oxford OX4 4GA	Schering Aktiengesellschaft Mullerstrasse 178 13342 Berlin Germany
	Patents ADP number (if you know it)		
	If the applicant is a corporate body, give the country/state of its incorporation	United Kingdom and Germany	
4.	Title of the invention	Composition	
5.	Name of your agent (if you have one)	D YOUNG & CO	
	"Address for service" in the United Kingdom to which all correspondence should be sent (including the postcode)	21 NEW FETTER LANE LONDON EC4A 1DA	
	Patents ADP number (if you have one)	59006	
6.	If you are declaring priority from one or more earlier patent applications, give the country and date of filing of the or each of these earlier applications and (if you know it) the or each application number	Country	Priority application number (if you know it)
			Date of filing (day/month/year)
7.	If this application is divided or otherwise derived from an earlier UK application, give the number and filing date of the earlier application	Number of earlier application	Date of filing (day/month/year)

62

8. Is a statement of inventorship and of right to grant of a patent required in support of this request? (Answer 'Yes' if:
a) any applicant named in part 3 is not an inventor, or
b) there is an inventor who is not named as an applicant, or
c) any named applicant is a corporate body.
See note (d)) Yes

9. Enter the number of sheets for any of the following items you are filing with this form. Do not count copies of the same document

Continuation sheets of this form 0

Description 53

Claims(s) 3

Abstract 1

Drawing(s) 11 + 11 1/2

10. If you are also filing any of the following, state how many against each item.

Priority documents 0

Translations of priority documents 0

Statement of inventorship and right to grant of a patent (Patents Form 7/77) 0

Request for preliminary examination and search (Patents Form 9/77) 0

Request for substantive examination (Patents Form 10/77) 0

Any other documents (please specify) 0

11. I/We request the grant of a patent on the basis of this application.

Signature

Date


D YOUNG & CO
Agents for the Applicants

28/1/2000

12. Name and daytime telephone number of the person to contact in the United Kingdom D Alcock

023 8063 4816

Warning

After an application for a patent has been filed, the Comptroller of the Patent Office will consider whether publication or communication of the invention should be prohibited or restricted under Section 22 of the Patents Act 1977. You will be informed if it is necessary to prohibit or restrict your invention in this way. Furthermore, if you live in the United Kingdom, Section 23 of the Patents Act 1977 stops you from applying for a patent abroad without first getting written permission from the Patent Office unless an application has been filed at least 6 weeks beforehand in the United Kingdom for a patent for the same invention and either no direction prohibiting publication or communication has been given, or any such direction has been revoked.

Notes

a) If you need help to fill in this form or you have any questions, please contact the Patent Office on 01645 500505

b) Write your answers in capital letters using black ink or you may type them

c) If there is not enough space for all the relevant details on any part of this form, please continue on a separate sheet of paper and write "see continuation sheet" in the relevant part(s). Any continuation sheet should be attached to this form.

d) If you answered 'Yes' Patents Form 7/77 will need to be filed.

e) Once you have filled in the form you must remember to sign and date it.

f) For details of the fee and ways to pay please contact the Patent Office.

159 166

1

COMPOSITION

FIELD OF INVENTION

5 The present invention relates to a composition.

In particular the present invention relates to a pharmaceutical composition comprising a compound in an amount to provide a dosage of no greater than 200 µg/day. The compound is a cyclic compound comprising ring system and a sulphamate group. The
10 present invention also relates to the use of the composition in therapy applications.

BACKGROUND TO THE INVENTION

Estrogens play a major role in hormonal contraception, in menopausal hormone
15 replacement therapy (HRT), and for treating gynaecological diseases (e.g. mammary carcinoma) and andrologic diseases (e.g. prostatic carcinoma). For HRT and contraception, estrogens are mainly used together with a gestagen, e.g. levonorgestrel, desogestrel, norethisterone, cyproterone acetate, chlormadinone acetate, dienogest. .

20 When used for contraception, estrogens are needed for safely suppressing follicle maturation and ovulation, but in addition they replace the endogenous ovarian secretion of estradiol which is suppressed to a major extent. This replacement is important for maintaining an artificial menstrual cycle and other genital functions, which could not be done to any satisfactory extent by just using a gestagen.

25 In addition, endogenous and exogenous estrogens fulfil important central nervous and metabolic functions in the female organism: normal estrogen levels make a decisive contribution to a woman's well-being. Their presence in the system counteracts the development of cardiovascular diseases through various mechanisms: generation of
30 "favourable" lipoprotein patterns in the blood, inhibition of lipid deposits in the walls of blood vessels, reduction in blood pressure by favourably influencing the vascular tonus, lowering of the perfusion resistance in essential vascular sectors, attenuation of contractile stimuli at the vascular muscle. The tunicae intimatae, when influenced by estrogens, release factors that counteract the formation of thrombi. Estrogens are also
35 indispensable for preserving the bone structure in women. Their absence may result in destruction of the bone (osteoporosis). These latter "central nervous" and "metabolic" effects of estrogens are a main aspect of HRT. It can be considered that estrogens have

analogous functions in the male organism, and that their withdrawal results in similar disorders as in women. One difference between the two sexes is that hormone production in males ceases less regularly and at a later age than that in women.

- 5 But notwithstanding all positive aspects of estrogen therapy there are unsolved problems, too, which restrict the therapeutic use of estrogens or entail undesired effects.

The known estrogens show pharmacokinetic deficits. Natural estrogens (estradiol, oestrone, oestrone sulphate, esters of estradiol, oestriol) become bioavailable only to a
10 very low degree when taken orally. This degree may vary so much from person to person that general dosage recommendations cannot be given. Fast elimination of the substances from the blood is another problem. Estrogen replacement under HRT often has to be adjusted to the individual.

- 15 The same is true of synthetic estrogens. The most important synthetically altered estrogenic steroid is ethinyl estradiol (EE). This estrogen is dominant in oral hormonal contraception. Apart from EE, mestranol is used in a few cases; this is a "prodrug" that is metabolised to EE in the organism. When applied orally to humans, EE has a much better bioavailability than the natural estrogens mentioned above, but its oral bioavailability
20 varies to an large extent from individual to individual. Several authors have pointed to this as well as to the fact that concentrations in the blood proved to be highly irregular after oral application of this substance (Goldzieher, J. W. 1989, Goldzieher, J. W. 1990, Humpel, M. 1987, Kuhnz, 1993).

- 25 In addition, the known estrogens show pharmacodynamic deficits. After resorption from the intestinal lumen, orally applied active ingredients enter the organism via the liver. This fact is of specific importance for estrogenic agents as the liver is a target organ for estrogens; oral intake of estrogens results in strong estrogenic effects in the liver. The secretion activity that is controlled by estrogens in the human liver includes synthesis of
30 transfer proteins CBG, SHBG, TBG, angiotensinogen, several factors that are important for the physiology of blood clotting, and lipoproteins. If natural estrogens are introduced to the female organism while avoiding passage through the liver (e.g. by transdermal application), the liver functions mentioned remain virtually unchanged. Therapeutically equivalent doses of natural estrogens (see definition above), when applied orally, result in
35 clear responses of hepatic parameters: increase of SHBG, CBG, angiotensinogen, HDL (high density lipoprotein). These hepatic effects of estrogen are clearly stronger when, instead of natural estrogens, equine estrogen formulations (so-called conjugated

160 767

estrogens) are used (Campbell, S. et al., 1981). Ethinyl estradiol and DES have an even greater hepatic oestrogenicity.

When referring to antigonadotropic properties, EE is about 4 to 18 times more estrogenic in the liver than orally applied natural estrogens are (Campbell, S. et al., 1981). This is a very unfavourable dissociation of properties.

These deficits are of considerable clinical significance when known natural and synthetic estrogens are to be applied.

A known complication that may occur after applying high doses of estrogen to males suffering from prostatic carcinoma is fatal thromboembolism. The potential of EE to produce side effects in the liver determines, though in a somewhat weakened form, the strategy of oral hormonal contraception. With a view to desired contraceptive effects and maintenance of the menstrual process on the one hand, and the need to take into account the considerable side effect potential on the other, controlling EE levels in the blood may be compared to a tightrope walk. It is quite possible that a large percentage of women cannot apply oral contraceptives because either menstrual bleeding abnormalities or estrogen-related side effects exceed the tolerance threshold.

Evidence suggests that oestrogens are the major mitogens involved in promoting the growth of tumours in endocrine-dependent tissues, such as the breast and endometrium. Although plasma oestrogen concentrations are similar in women with or without breast cancer, breast tumour oestrone and oestradiol levels are significantly higher than in normal breast tissue or blood. *In situ* synthesis of oestrogen is thought to make an important contribution to the high levels of oestrogens in tumours and therefore inhibitors, in particular specific inhibitors, of oestrogen biosynthesis are of potential value for the treatment of endocrine-dependent tumours.

Over the past two decades, there has been considerable interest in the development of inhibitors of the aromatase pathway - which converts the androgen precursor androstenedione to oestrone. However, there is now evidence that the oestrone sulphatase (E1-STS) pathway, i.e. the hydrolysis of oestrone sulphate to oestrone (E1S to E1), as opposed to the aromatase pathway, is the major source of oestrogen in breast tumours. This theory is supported by a modest reduction of plasma oestrogen concentration in postmenopausal women with breast cancer treated by aromatase inhibitors, such as aminoglutethimide and 4-hydroxyandrostenedione, and also by the fact

63

that plasma E1S concentration in these aromatase inhibitor-treated patients remains relatively high. The long half-life of E1S in blood (10-12 h) compared with the unconjugated oestrogens (20 min) and high levels of steroid sulphatase activity in liver and, normal and malignant breast tissues, also lend support to this theory.

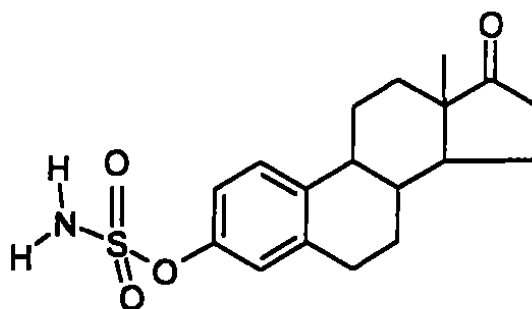
5

PCT/GB92/01587 teaches novel steroid sulphatase inhibitors and pharmaceutical compositions containing them for use in the treatment of oestrone dependent tumours, especially breast cancer. These steroid sulphatase inhibitors are sulphamate esters, such as N,N-dimethyl oestrone-3-sulphamate and, preferably, oestrone-3-sulphamate (otherwise known as "EMATE"). Further sulphamate esters are disclosed WO 96/05216 and WO 96/05217. These sulphamate esters include oestradiol-3-sulphamate (referred to herein as J995)

10

EMATE (oestrone-3-O-sulphamate) – has the following structure:

15



It is known that EMATE is a potent E1-STS inhibitor as it displays more than 99% inhibition of E1-STS activity in intact MCF-7 cells at 0.1 mM. EMATE also inhibits the E1-STS enzyme in a time- and concentration-dependent manner, indicating that it acts as an active site-directed inactivator. Although EMATE was originally designed for the inhibition of E1-STS, it also inhibits dehydroepiandrosterone sulphatase (DHA-STS), which is an enzyme that is believed to have a pivotal role in regulating the biosynthesis of the oestrogenic steroid androstenediol. Also, there is now evidence to suggest that androstenediol may be of even greater importance as a promoter of breast tumour growth. EMATE is also active in vivo as almost complete inhibition of rat liver E1-STS (99%) and DHA-STS (99%) activities resulted when it is administered either orally or subcutaneously. In addition, EMATE has been shown to have a memory enhancing effect in rats. Studies in mice have suggested an association between DHA-STS activity and the regulation of part of the immune response. It is thought that this may also occur in humans. The bridging O-atom of the sulphamate moiety in EMATE is important for

20

25

30

161
100

inhibitory activity. Thus, when the 3-O-atom is replaced by other heteroatoms as in oestrone-3-N-sulphamate and oestrone-3-S-sulphamate, these analogues are weaker non-time-dependent inactivators.

- 5 Although optimal potency for inhibition of E1-STS may have been attained in EMATE, it is possible that oestrone may be released during sulphatase inhibition and that EMATE and its oestradiol congener may possess oestrogenic activity.

10 Ahmed *et al* (Biochem Biophys Res Commun 1999 Jan 27;254(3):811-5) report on a structure-activity relationship study of steroidal and nonsteroidal inhibitors of STS.

It is therefore an aim of the present invention to provide novel compositions suitable for oral contraception, hormone replacement therapy, the inhibition of E1-STS as well as other therapeutic applications.

15

SUMMARY ASPECTS OF THE PRESENT INVENTION

The present invention is based on the surprising finding that compositions providing a cyclic compound, which cyclic compound comprises a ring system and a sulphamate group ("a sulphamate compound"), in an amount to provide a dosage of no greater than 200 µg/day may provide oral contraception, hormone replacement therapy, and/or the inhibition of E1-STS. At the dosage provided by the composition of the present invention, the delivered compounds show a more favourable relation between desired and therapeutically undesired effects.

25

The sulphamate compounds comprise at least one ring component. That ring component comprises at least 4 atoms in the ring. Typically, those 4 atoms will be carbon atoms. Thus, typically, that ring component will be a hydrocarbyl group. The cyclic compound also includes a sulphamate group as further substituent(s) on the ring system. The sulphamate group is a substituent on the ring component.

30

DETAILED ASPECTS OF THE PRESENT INVENTION

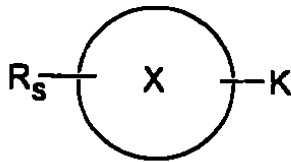
According to one aspect of the present invention, there is provided a pharmaceutical composition comprising

35

- (i) a compound of Formula (I)

64

Formula I



wherein: X is a hydrocarbyl ring having at least 4 atoms in the ring; K is a hydrocarbyl group; Rs is a sulphamate group:

(ii) optionally admixed with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, diluent, excipient or adjuvant,

wherein the compound is present in an amount to provide a dosage of no greater than 200 µg/day.

In an alternative aspect the present invention provides a pharmaceutical composition comprising a compound, wherein the compound is present in an amount such that the compound described above or a metabolite thereof is provided to the blood plasma of the subject to be treated in amount of no greater than 200 µg/day.

The above maximum dosage and all dosages referred to in the present specification relate to a dosage for a 70 kg subject, unless indicated to the contrary. A person skilled in the art would readily be able to modify the recited dosages for a subject having a mass other than 70kg

The dosage per day is calculated by dividing the dose to be administered to the subject by the anticipated dosage period in days. The anticipated dosage period will typically be the period until the next administration, the period over which the dose is to have effect or the period over which the dose is required to have effect.

According to one aspect of the present invention, there is provided a composition according to the present invention for use in medicine.

According to one aspect of the present invention, there is provided the use of a composition according to the present invention in the manufacture of a medicament for use in oral contraception.

30

According to one aspect of the present invention, there is provided the use of a composition according to the present invention in the manufacture of a medicament for use in hormone replacement therapy.

162 469

According to one aspect of the present invention, there is provided the use of a composition according to the present invention in the manufacture of a medicament for use in the therapy of a condition or disease associated with STS.

5

According to one aspect of the present invention, there is provided the use of a compound according to the present invention in the manufacture of a medicament for use in the therapy of a condition or disease associated with adverse STS levels.

10 According to one aspect of the present invention, there is provided a method of treating a subject comprising administering to said subject a compound according to the present invention in an amount of no greater than 200 µg/day.

For ease of reference, these and further aspects of the present invention are now
15 discussed under appropriate section headings. However, the teachings under each section are not necessarily limited to each particular section.

PREFERABLE ASPECTS

20 Preferably, the compound is present in the composition in an amount to provide a dosage of from 10 to 200 µg/day.

Preferably, the compound is present in the composition in an amount to provide a dosage of from 50 to 200 µg/day.

25

Preferably, the compound is present in the composition in an amount to provide a dosage of from 20 to 50 µg/day.

The composition may be formulated such that administration daily, weekly or monthly will
30 provide the desired daily dosage. For example, the present invention may provide a composition comprising the sulphamate compound in amount of no greater 200 µg/dose (for daily dose), no greater than 1.4 mg/dose (weekly dose) or no greater than 5 mg/dose (monthly dose). It will be appreciated that the composition may also be formulated for administration more or less frequently than daily, weekly or monthly.

35

Preferably, X in combination with K mimics a steroidal structure.

76

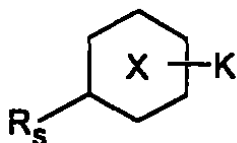
Preferably, K is a cyclic group.

Preferably, X is a six-membered ring.

- 5 Preferably, the ring X has six carbon atoms in the ring.

Preferably, the compound of Formula I has the formula presented as Formula II wherein each of Rs, X and K have the above-mentioned meanings.

Formula II



- 10 Preferably the group K and the ring X together will contain, inclusive of all substituents, a maximum of about 50 carbon atoms, more usually no more than about 30 to 40 carbon atoms.

Preferably, X in combination with K is a steroidal ring structure.

15

Preferably, group K and ring X are a steroid ring structure or a substituted derivative thereof.

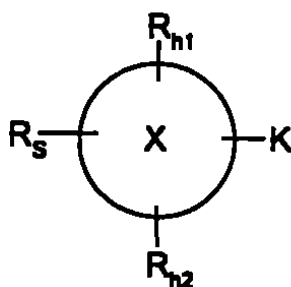
Preferably, the Rs group is at position 3 of the ring X.

20

Preferably, Rs is a sulphamate group.

Preferably the compound is of Formula III

Formula III



- 25 wherein X, K and Rs are as defined above; and wherein Rh1 is an optional halo group; Rh2 is an optional halo group; at least one of Rh1 and Rh2 is present

163 170

Preferably, the Rh1 is at position 2 of the ring X.

Preferably, the Rh2 is at position 4 of the ring X.

- 5 For some applications, preferably the compounds have no, or a minimal, oestrogenic effect.

For some applications, preferably the compounds have an oestrogenic effect.

- 10 In one embodiment, the composition of the present invention are useful for the treatment of breast cancer.

SOME ADVANTAGES

- 15 Key advantages of the present invention include the improved pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of the composition of the present invention.

One key advantage of the present invention is that at the delivered dosage the sulphamate compounds have a low hepatic metabolism. It is believed that the
20 compounds of the present invention, such as EMATE and J995, have a high affinity to erythrocytes, up to 99% of the compound in blood is so bound. Liver passage of the compound in this compartment avoids extraction, metabolism and hepatic first pass action. Thus the delivered sulphamate compounds have a high bioavailability.

- 25 A further key advantage of the present invention is that the sulphamate compounds exhibit low variation in concentration in plasma between individuals. The reduction in variation between individuals of estrogen levels in the blood particularly allows for the provision of a monoproduct for both hysterectomised and non- hysterectomised subjects without the need to develop separate products.

30 A further key advantage of the present invention is that the sulphamate compounds exhibit slow elimination from the subject. The composition of the present invention provide steady plasma levels of oestrone (E1) and oestradiol (E2).

- 35 One key advantage of the present invention is that at the delivered dosage the sulphamate compounds have a low hormone action. Therefore the risks of deep vein thrombosis are reduced.

66

One key advantage of the present invention is that at the delivered dosage protection of bones is provided, yet the dose is below the endometrial proliferation/stimulation threshold. As described above, estrogens are indispensable for preserving the bone structure in women. Their absence may result in destruction of the bone (osteoporosis). However, in typical HRT an oestrone is administered at a dose such that, as well as the beneficial effects, the endometrium proliferates. The composition of the present invention provides a hormone replacement therapy for bone protection without endometrial stimulation.

Thus in a further aspect the present invention provides use of a compound as defined herein, preferably a composition as defined herein, in the manufacture of a medicament for bone protecting hormone replacement therapy without endometrial stimulation.

Another advantage is that the composition may be formulated without the incorporation of progestins.

Another advantage is that some of the compounds may not be capable of being metabolised to compounds which display or induce hormonal activity.

Some of the compounds of the present invention are also advantageous in that they may be orally active.

Some of the compounds of the present invention may be useful for the treatment of cancer, such as breast cancer, as well as (or in the alternative) non-malignant conditions, such as the prevention of auto-immune diseases, particularly when pharmaceuticals may need to be administered from an early age.

Thus, some of the compounds of the present invention are also believed to have therapeutic uses other than for the treatment of endocrine-dependent cancers, such as the treatment of autoimmune diseases.

HORMONE REPLACEMENT THERAPY

The composition of the present invention may be formulated to provide a hormone replacement therapy. The composition will be formulated to contain the sulphamate compound in amount such that, depending on the prescribed frequency of administration,

164 171

the required daily dosage of sulphamate compound is provided.

In one aspect the composition will be formulated to allow for daily administration. This composition may be formulated in combination with progestins.

5

In all aspects of the present invention, including daily oral administration, hormone replacement therapy is achieved in a manner more convenient than application of a transdermal patch, one typical administration route for HRT.

10 DAILY

When a daily regimen is provided of, for example an administration of 100 µg/day, the following key advantages are particularly observed

- reduction in variation of estrogen levels in the blood of the subject between individuals
- 15 • steady plasma levels of E1 and E2

When a daily regimen is provided of an administration of 20 to 50 µg/day the following key advantages are particularly observed

- no uterine bleeding is observed
- 20 • no mammary gland impact

WEEKLY

In one aspect the composition will be formulated to allow for weekly administration. A weekly dose of 0.5 to 2 mg/week, for example 1 mg/week may be provided.

25

A weekly dose will be advantageous for reasons of convenience over both patches and the daily administration of the composition of the present invention.

30 MONTHLY

A monthly HRT composition of the present invention is also envisaged in which a single monthly dosage of 2 to 4mg, or up to 5mg/dose, of compound is provided

35 Furthermore the pharmaceutical compositions containing the compounds according to the invention can be used for treatment of endometrioses and for therapy of oestrogen-

167

dependent tumours. In this respect one key advantage of the present invention is that the sulphamate compounds of the present invention can act as steroid sulphatase inhibitors.

STEROID SULPHATASE

5

Steroid sulphatase – which is sometimes referred to as steroid sulfatase or steryl sulphatase or "STS" for short – hydrolyses several sulphated steroids, such as oestrone sulphate, dehydroepiandrosterone sulphate and cholesterol sulphate. STS has been allocated the enzyme number EC 3.1.6.2.

10

STS has been cloned and expressed. For example see Stein *et al* (J. Biol. Chem. 264:13865-13872 (1989)) and Yen *et al* (Cell 49:443-454(1987)).

STS is an enzyme that has been implicated in a number of disease conditions.

15

By way of example, workers have found that a total deficiency in STS produces ichthyosis. According to some workers, STS deficiency is fairly prevalent in Japan. The same workers (Sakura *et al*, J Inherit Metab Dis 1997 Nov;20(6):807-10) have also reported that allergic diseases – such as bronchial asthma, allergic rhinitis, or atopic dermatitis - may be associated with a steroid sulphatase deficiency.

20

In addition to disease states being brought on through a total lack of STS activity, an increased level of STS activity may also bring about disease conditions. By way of example, and as indicated above, there is strong evidence to support a role of STS in breast cancer growth and metastasis.

25

STS has also been implicated in other disease conditions. By way of example, Le Roy *et al* (Behav Genet 1999 Mar;29(2):131-6) have determined that there may be a genetic correlation between steroid sulphatase concentration and initiation of attack behaviour in mice. The authors conclude that sulphatation of steroids may be the prime mover of a complex network, including genes shown to be implicated in aggression by mutagenesis.

30

STS INHIBITION

It is believed that some disease conditions associated with STS activity are due to conversion of a nonactive, sulphated oestrone to an active, nonsulphated oestrone. In

35

165

H2

disease conditions associated with STS activity, it would be desirable to inhibit STS activity.

Here, the term "inhibit" includes reduce and/or eliminate and/or mask and/or prevent the detrimental action of STS.

STS INHIBITOR

In accordance with the present invention, the compound of the present invention is capable of acting as an STS inhibitor.

Here, the term "inhibitor" as used herein with respect to the compound of the present invention means a compound that can inhibit STS activity – such as reduce and/or eliminate and/or mask and/or prevent the detrimental action of STS. The STS inhibitor may act as an antagonist.

The ability of compounds to inhibit oestrone sulphatase activity can be assessed using either intact MCF-7 breast cancer cells or placental microsomes. In addition, an animal model may be used. Details on suitable Assay Protocols are presented in following sections. It is to be noted that other assays could be used to determine STS activity and thus STS inhibition. For example, reference may also be made to the teachings of WO-A-99/50453.

Preferably, for some applications, the compound is further characterised by the feature that if the sulphamate group were to be substituted by a sulphate group to form a sulphate derivative, then the sulphate derivative would be hydrolysable by an enzyme having steroid sulphatase (E.C. 3.1.6.2) activity - i.e. when incubated with steroid sulphatase EC 3.1.6.2 at pH 7.4 and 37°C.

In one preferred embodiment, if the sulphamate group of the compound were to be replaced with a sulphate group to form a sulphate compound then that sulphate compound would be hydrolysable by an enzyme having steroid sulphatase (E.C. 3.1.6.2) activity and would yield a Km value of less than 200 mmolar, preferably less than 150 mmolar, preferably less than 100 mmolar, preferably less than 75 mmolar, preferably less than 50 mmolar, when incubated with steroid sulphatase EC 3.1.6.2 at pH 7.4 and 37°C.

68

In a preferred embodiment, the compound of the present invention is not hydrolysable by an enzyme having steroid sulphatase (E.C. 3.1.6.2) activity.

For some applications, preferably the compound of the present invention has at least about a 100 fold selectivity to a desired target (e.g. STS), preferably at least about a 150 fold selectivity to the desired target, preferably at least about a 200 fold selectivity to the desired target, preferably at least about a 250 fold selectivity to the desired target, preferably at least about a 300 fold selectivity to the desired target, preferably at least about a 350 fold selectivity to the desired target.

10

It is to be noted that the compound of the present invention may have other beneficial properties in addition to or in the alternative to its ability to inhibit STS activity.

GROUP K

15

Group K need not be a cyclic structure. In this regard, group K may be a linear structure that may have the ability to conform to a ring like structure when in *in vivo*.

In a preferred aspect, group K is cyclic - so as to form the cyclic group K.

20

Cyclic group K need not necessarily be fused to ring X. In this regard, they may be separated by a suitable spacer group – which may be a hydrocarbyl group.

In a preferred aspect, cyclic group K is fused to ring X.

25

Group K may be a polycyclic group, which need not be a fused polycycle.

Thus, in a preferred aspect, group K and ring X make up a polycyclic compound. As indicated, here the term "polycyclic" includes fused and non-fused ring structures including combinations thereof.

30

At least one of the cyclic groups K and X may be a heterocyclic group (a heterocycle) or a non-heterocyclic group.

At least one of the cyclic groups K and X may be a saturated ring structure or an unsaturated ring structure (such as an aryl group).

35

116 127

Preferably, at least one of the cyclic groups is an aryl ring.

If the cyclic group is polycyclic some or all of the ring components of the compound may be fused together or joined via one or more suitable spacer groups.

5

The polycyclic compound may comprise a number of fused rings. In this aspect the fused rings may comprise any combination of different size rings, such as 3 six-membered rings (6,6,6), a six-membered ring, a seven-membered ring and a six-membered ring (6,7,6), a six-membered ring and two eight-membered rings (6,8,8) etc.

10

In one aspect the present invention relates to compounds wherein the polycyclic compounds are other than (6,6,7) rings. In a further aspect, the present invention relates to compounds wherein the polycyclic compounds only contain rings having other than 7 members.

15

Preferably the polycyclic compound will contain, inclusive of all substituents, no more than 50 about carbon atoms, more usually no more than about 30 to 40 carbon atoms.

20

The polycyclic compound can comprise at least two ring components, or at least three ring components, or at least four ring components.

Preferably, the polycyclic compound comprises four ring components.

Preferred polycyclic compounds have a steroidal ring component, or bio-isosteres thereof.

25

HYDROCARBYL

30

The term "hydrocarbyl group" as used herein means a group comprising at least C and H and may optionally comprise one or more other suitable substituents. Examples of such substituents may include halo, alkoxy, nitro, an alkyl group, a cyclic group etc. In addition to the possibility of the substituents being a cyclic group, a combination of substituents may form a cyclic group. If the hydrocarbyl group comprises more than one C then those carbons need not necessarily be linked to each other. For example, at least two of the carbons may be linked via a suitable element or group. Thus, the hydrocarbyl group may contain hetero atoms. Suitable hetero atoms will be apparent to those skilled in the art and include, for instance, sulphur, nitrogen and oxygen. A non-limiting example of a hydrocarbyl group is an acyl group.

35

69

A typical hydrocarbyl group is a hydrocarbon group. Here the term "hydrocarbon" means any one of an alkyl group, an alkenyl group, an alkynyl group, which groups may be linear, branched or cyclic, or an aryl group. The term hydrocarbon also includes those groups but wherein they have been optionally substituted. If the hydrocarbon is a branched structure having substituent(s) thereon, then the substitution may be on either the hydrocarbon backbone or on the branch; alternatively the substitutions may be on the hydrocarbon backbone and on the branch.

10 SULPHAMATE GROUP

In one embodiment, the ring X has a sulphamate group as a substituent. The term "sulphamate" as used herein includes an ester of sulphamic acid, or an ester of an N-substituted derivative of sulphamic acid, or a salt thereof.

If Rs is a sulphamate group then the compound of the present invention is referred to as a sulphamate compound.

Typically, the sulphamate group has the formula:



wherein preferably R1 and R2 are independently selected from H, alkyl, cycloalkyl, alkenyl and aryl, or combinations thereof, or together represent alkylene, wherein the or each alkyl or cycloalkyl or alkenyl or optionally contain one or more hetero atoms or groups.

When substituted, the N-substituted compounds of this invention may contain one or two N-alkyl, N-alkenyl, N-cycloalkyl or N-aryl substituents, preferably containing or each containing a maximum of 10 carbon atoms. When R1 and/or R2 is alkyl, the preferred values are those where R1 and R2 are each independently selected from lower alkyl groups containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms, that is to say methyl, ethyl, propyl etc. R1 and R2 may both be methyl. When R1 and/or R2 is aryl, typical values are phenyl and tolyl (PhCH₃; o). Where R1 and R2 represent cycloalkyl, typical values are cyclopropyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl etc. When joined together R1 and R2 typically represent an alkylene group providing a chain of 4 to 6 carbon atoms, optionally interrupted by one or

167 197

more hetero atoms or groups, e.g. to provide a 5 membered heterocycle, e.g. morpholino, pyrrolidino or piperidino.

5 Within the values alkyl, cycloalkyl, alkenyl and aryl substituted groups are included containing as substituents therein one or more groups which do not interfere with the sulphatase inhibitory activity of the compound in question. Exemplary non-interfering substituents include hydroxy, amino, halo, alkoxy, alkyl and aryl.

10 In some embodiments, the sulphamate group may form a ring structure by being fused to (or associated with) one or more atoms in or on group X.

In some embodiments, there may be more than one sulphamate group. By way of example, there may be two sulphamates (i.e. bis-sulphamate compounds). If these compounds are based on a steroidal nucleus, preferably the second (or at least one of the additional) sulphamate group is located at position 17 of the steroidal nucleus. These groups need not be the same.

In some preferred embodiments, at least one of R1 and R2 is H.

20 In some further preferred embodiments, each of R1 and R2 is H.

MIMIC

25 In one aspect, X and K can be a mimic of a steroidal ring structure

The term "mimic" as used herein means having a similar or different structure but having a similar functional effect. In other words, group K and ring X together may be a bio-isostere of the rings of a steroid, or an active part thereof.

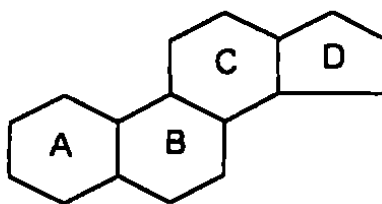
30 In a preferred aspect, group K and ring X together may be a bio-isostere of the rings of oestrone, or a part thereof.

STEROIDAL RING STRUCTURE

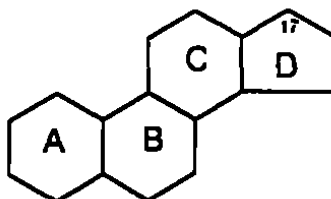
35 In one preferred aspect, X and K make up a steroidal ring structure - that is to say a cyclopentanophenanthrene skeleton, or bio-isosteres thereof.

20

As it is well known in the art, a classical steroidal ring structure has the generic formula of:



5

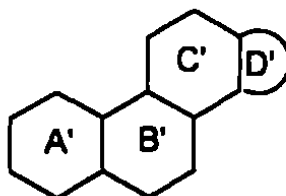


In the above formula, the rings have been labelled in the conventional manner.

10 An example of a bio-isostere is when any one or more of rings A, B, C and D is a heterocyclic ring and/or when any one or more of rings A, B, C and D has been substituted and/or when any one or more of rings A, B, C and D has been modified; but wherein the bio-isostere in the absence of the sulphamate group has steroidal properties.

In this regard, the structure of a preferred polycyclic structure can be presented as:

15



20 wherein each ring A', B', C' and D' independently represents a heterocyclic ring or a non-heterocyclic ring, which rings may be independently substituted or unsubstituted, saturated or unsaturated.

By way of example, any one or more of rings A', B', C' and D' may be independently substituted with suitable groups - such as an alkyl group, an aryl group, a hydroxy group, a halo group, a hydrocarbyl group, an oxyhydrocarbyl group etc.

25

168
TAD

An example of D' is a five or six membered non-heterocyclic ring having at least one substituent.

In one preferred embodiment, the ring D' is substituted with a ethinyl group.

5

If any one of rings A', B', C' and D' is a heterocyclic ring, then preferably that heterocyclic ring comprises a combination of C atoms and at least one N atom and/or at least one O atom. Other heterocyclic atoms may be present in the ring.

10 Examples of suitable, preferred steroidal nuclei rings A'-D' of the compounds of the present invention include rings A-D of dehydroepiandrosterone and oestrogens including oestrone. Preferred oestrogens include natural oestrogens such as oestrone, oestradiol, oestratriol, epi-estriol; and conjugated oestrogens (equilenin derivatives).

15 In one aspect of the present invention, it is preferred that the compound of the present invention is a prodrug of a natural oestrogen, preferably a natural oestrogen selected from oestrone, oestradiol, oestratriol, and epi-estriol.

Preferred steroidal nuclei rings A'-D' of the compounds of the present invention include
20 rings A-D of:

oestrones and substituted oestrones, viz:

oestrone

4-OH-oestrone

25 6 α -OH-oestrone

7 α -OH-oestrone

16 α -OH-oestrone

16 β -OH-oestrone

17-deoxyoestrone

30 oestrone

oestradiols and substituted oestradiols, viz:

4-OH-17 β -oestradiol

6 α -OH-17 β -oestradiol

35 7 α -OH-17 β -oestradiol

4-OH-17 α -oestradiol

71

6 α -OH-17 α -oestradiol

7 α -OH-17 α -oestradiol

16 α -OH-17 α -oestradiol

16 α -OH-17 β -oestradiol

5 16 β -OH-17 α -oestradiol

16 β -OH-17 β -oestradiol

17 α -oestradiol

17 β -oestradiol

17 α -ethinyl-17 β -oestradiol

10 17 β -ethinyl-17 α -oestradiol

17-deoxyoestradiol

oestriols and substituted oestriols, viz:

oestriol

15 4-OH-oestriol

6 α -OH-oestriol

7 α -OH-oestriol

17-deoxyoestriol

20 dehydroepiandrosterones and substituted dehydroepiandrosterones, viz:

dehydroepiandrosterones

6 α -OH-dehydroepiandrosterone

7 α -OH-dehydroepiandrosterone

16 α -OH-dehydroepiandrosterone

25 16 β -OH-dehydroepiandrosterone

In general terms the ring system A'B'C'D' may contain a variety of non-interfering substituents. In particular, the ring system A'B'C'D' may contain one or more hydroxy, alkyl especially lower (C₁-C₆) alkyl, e.g. methyl, ethyl, n-propyl, isopropyl, n-butyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, n-pentyl and other pentyl isomers, and n-hexyl and other hexyl isomers, alkoxy especially lower (C₁-C₆) alkoxy, e.g. methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy etc., alkynyl, e.g. ethinyl, or halogen, e.g. fluoro substituents.

NON-STEROID STRUCTURES

35

169 216

In an alternative embodiment, the compound of the present invention may not contain or be based on a steroid nucleus. In this regard, the polycyclic compound may contain or be based on a non-steroidal ring system - such as diethylstilboestrol, stilboestrol, coumarins, flavonoids, combrestatin and other ring systems. Other suitable non-steroidal compounds for use in or as the composition of the present invention may be found in US-A-5567831.

OTHER SUBSTITUENTS

The compound of the present invention may have substituents other than Rh1, Rh2 and Rs. By way of example, these other substituents may be one or more of: one or more sulphamate group(s), one or more phosphonate group(s), one or more thiophosphonate group(s), one or more sulphonate group(s), one or more sulphonamide group(s), one or more halo groups, one or more O groups, one or more hydroxy groups, one or more amino groups, one or more sulphur containing group(s), one or more hydrocarbyl group(s) – such as an oxyhydrocarbyl group.

OXYHYDROCARBYL

The term "oxyhydrocarbyl" group as used herein means a group comprising at least C, H and O and may optionally comprise one or more other suitable substituents. Examples of such substituents may include halo-, alkoxy-, nitro-, an alkyl group, a cyclic group etc. In addition to the possibility of the substituents being a cyclic group, a combination of substituents may form a cyclic group. If the oxyhydrocarbyl group comprises more than one C then those carbons need not necessarily be linked to each other. For example, at least two of the carbons may be linked via a suitable element or group. Thus, the oxyhydrocarbyl group may contain hetero atoms. Suitable hetero atoms will be apparent to those skilled in the art and include, for instance, sulphur and nitrogen.

In one embodiment of the present invention, the oxyhydrocarbyl group is a oxyhydrocarbon group.

Here the term "oxyhydrocarbon" means any one of an alkoxy group, an oxyalkenyl group, an oxyalkynyl group, which groups may be linear, branched or cyclic, or an oxyaryl group. The term oxyhydrocarbon also includes those groups but wherein they have been optionally substituted. If the oxyhydrocarbon is a branched structure having substituent(s) thereon, then the substitution may be on either the hydrocarbon backbone

22

or on the branch: alternatively the substitutions may be on the hydrocarbon backbone and on the branch.

Typically, the oxyhydrocarbyl group is of the formula $C_{1-3}O$ (such as a $C_{1-3}O$).

5

ASSAY FOR DETERMINING STS ACTIVITY USING CANCER CELLS (PROTOCOL 1)

Inhibition of Steroid Sulphatase Activity in MCF-7 cells

- 10 Steroid sulphatase activity is measured *in vitro* using intact MCF-7 human breast cancer cells. This hormone dependent cell line is widely used to study the control of human breast cancer cell growth. It possesses significant steroid sulphatase activity (MacIndoe et al. Endocrinology, 123, 1281-1287 (1988); Purohit & Reed, Int. J. Cancer. 50, 901-905 (1992)) and is available in the U.S.A. from the American Type Culture Collection (ATCC)
- 15 and in the U.K. (e.g. from The Imperial Cancer Research Fund).

- Cells are maintained in Minimal Essential Medium (MEM) (Flow Laboratories, Irvine, Scotland) containing 20 mM HEPES, 5% foetal bovine serum, 2 mM glutamine, non-essential amino acids and 0.075% sodium bicarbonate. Up to 30 replicate 25 cm² tissue
- 20 culture flasks are seeded with approximately 1×10^5 cells/flask using the above medium. Cells are grown to 80% confluency and the medium is changed every third day.

- Intact monolayers of MCF-7 cells in triplicate 25 cm² tissue culture flasks are washed with Earle's Balanced Salt Solution (EBSS from ICN Flow, High Wycombe, U.K.) and
- 25 incubated for 3-4 hours at 37°C with 5 pmol (7×10^5 dpm) [6,7-³H]oestrone-3-sulphate (specific activity 60 Ci/mmol from New England Nuclear, Boston, Mass., U.S.A.) in serum-free MEM (2.5 ml) together with oestrone-3-sulphamate (11 concentrations: 0; 1fM; 0.01pM; 0.1pM; 1pM; 0.01nM; 0.1nM; 1nM; 0.01mM; 0.1mM; 1mM). After incubation each flask is cooled and the medium (1 ml) is pipetted into separate tubes containing
- 30 [14C]oestrone (7×10^3 dpm) (specific activity 97 Ci/mmol from Amersham International Radiochemical Centre, Amersham, U.K.). The mixture is shaken thoroughly for 30 seconds with toluene (5 ml). Experiments have shown that >90% [14C] oestrone and <0.1% [3H]oestrone-3-sulphate is removed from the aqueous phase by this treatment. A portion (2 ml) of the organic phase is removed, evaporated and the 3H and 14C content
- 35 of the residue determined by scintillation spectrometry. The mass of oestrone-3-sulphate hydrolysed was calculated from the 3H counts obtained (corrected for the volumes of the medium and organic phase used, and for recovery of [14C] oestrone added) and the

no 122

specific activity of the substrate. Each batch of experiments includes incubations of microsomes prepared from a sulphatase-positive human placenta (positive control) and flasks without cells (to assess apparent non-enzymatic hydrolysis of the substrate). The number of cell nuclei per flask is determined using a Coulter Counter after treating the cell monolayers with Zaponin. One flask in each batch is used to assess cell membrane status and viability using the Trypan Blue exclusion method (Phillips, H.J. (1973) In: Tissue culture and applications, [eds: Kruse, D.F. & Patterson, M.K.]; pp. 406-408: Academic Press, New York).

Results for steroid sulphatase activity are expressed as the mean $\pm$ 1 S.D. of the total product (oestrone + oestradiol) formed during the incubation period (20 hours) calculated for 106 cells and, for values showing statistical significance, as a percentage reduction (inhibition) over incubations containing no oestrone-3-sulphamate. Unpaired Student's t-test was used to test the statistical significance of results.

ASSAY FOR DETERMINING STS ACTIVITY USING PLACENTAL MICROSOMES (PROTOCOL 2)

Inhibition of Steroid Sulphatase Activity in Placental Microsomes

Sulphatase-positive human placenta from normal term pregnancies are thoroughly minced with scissors and washed once with cold phosphate buffer (pH 7.4, 50 mM) then re-suspended in cold phosphate buffer (5 ml/g tissue). Homogenisation is accomplished with an Ultra-Turrax homogeniser, using three 10 second bursts separated by 2 minute cooling periods in ice. Nuclei and cell debris are removed by centrifuging (4°C) at 2000g for 30 minutes and portions (2 ml) of the supernatant are stored at 20°C. The protein concentration of the supernatants is determined by the method of Bradford (Anal. Biochem., 72, 248-254 (1976)).

Incubations (1 ml) are carried out using a protein concentration of 100 mg/ml, substrate concentration of 20 mM [6,7-3H]oestrone-3-sulphate (specific activity 60 Ci/mmol from New England Nuclear, Boston, Mass., U.S.A.) and an incubation time of 20 minutes at 37°C. If necessary eight concentrations of compounds are employed: 0 (i.e. control); 0.05mM; 0.1mM; 0.2mM; 0.4mM; 0.6mM; 0.8mM; 1.0mM. After incubation each sample is cooled and the medium (1 ml) was pipetted into separate tubes containing [14C]oestrone (7 x 10³ dpm) (specific activity 97 Ci/mmol from Amersham International Radiochemical Centre, Amersham, U.K.). The mixture is shaken thoroughly for 30

73

seconds with toluene (5 ml). Experiments have shown that >90% [¹⁴C]oestrone and <0.1% [³H]oestrone-3-sulphate is removed from the aqueous phase by this treatment. A portion (2 ml) of the organic phase was removed, evaporated and the ³H and ¹⁴C content of the residue determined by scintillation spectrometry. The mass of oestrone-3-sulphate hydrolysed is calculated from the ³H counts obtained (corrected for the volumes of the medium and organic phase used, and for recovery of [¹⁴C]oestrone added) and the specific activity of the substrate.

ANIMAL ASSAY MODEL FOR DETERMINING STS ACTIVITY (PROTOCOL 3)

Inhibition of oestrone sulphotase activity in vivo

The compounds of the present invention may be studied using an animal model, in particular in ovariectomised rats. In this model compounds which are oestrogenic stimulate uterine growth.

The compound (0.1 mg/Kg/day for five days) is administered orally to rats with another group of animals receiving vehicle only (propylene glycol). At the end of the study samples of liver tissue were obtained and oestrone sulphotase activity assayed using ³H oestrone sulphate as the substrate as previously described (see PCT/GB95/02638).

ANIMAL ASSAY MODEL FOR DETERMINING OESTROGENIC ACTIVITY (PROTOCOL 4)

Lack of in vivo oestrogenicity

The compounds of the present invention may be studied using an animal model, in particular in ovariectomised rats. In this model, compounds which are oestrogenic stimulate uterine growth.

The compound (0.1 mg/Kg/day for five days) was administered orally to rats with another group of animals receiving vehicle only (propylene glycol). At the end of the study uteri were obtained and weighed with the results being expressed as uterine weight/whole body weight x 100.

Compounds having no significant effect on uterine growth are not oestrogenic.

171 278

BIOTECHNOLOGICAL ASSAYS FOR DETERMINING STS ACTIVITY (PROTOCOL 5)

The ability of compounds to inhibit oestrone sulphatase activity can also be assessed using amino acid sequences or nucleotide sequences encoding STS, or active fragments, derivatives, homologues or variants thereof in, for example, high-through put screens.

Any one or more of appropriate targets - such as an amino acid sequence and/or nucleotide sequence - may be used for identifying an agent capable of modulating STS in any of a variety of drug screening techniques. The target employed in such a test may be free in solution, affixed to a solid support, borne on a cell surface, or located intracellularly. The abolition of target activity or the formation of binding complexes between the target and the agent being tested may be measured.

The assay of the present invention may be a screen, whereby a number of agents are tested. In one aspect, the assay method of the present invention is a high through put screen.

Techniques for drug screening may be based on the method described in Geysen, European Patent Application 84/03564, published on September 13, 1984. In summary, large numbers of different small peptide test compounds are synthesised on a solid substrate, such as plastic pins or some other surface. The peptide test compounds are reacted with a suitable target or fragment thereof and washed. Bound entities are then detected - such as by appropriately adapting methods well known in the art. A purified target can also be coated directly onto plates for use in a drug screening techniques. Alternatively, non-neutralising antibodies can be used to capture the peptide and immobilise it on a solid support.

This invention also contemplates the use of competitive drug screening assays in which neutralising antibodies capable of binding a target specifically compete with a test compound for binding to a target.

Another technique for screening provides for high throughput screening (HTS) of agents having suitable binding affinity to the substances and is based upon the method described in detail in WO 84/03564.

It is expected that the assay methods of the present invention will be suitable for both small and large-scale screening of test compounds as well as in quantitative assays.

278

In one preferred aspect, the present invention relates to a method of identifying agents that selectively modulate STS, which compounds have the formula (Ia).

5 REPORTERS

A wide variety of reporters may be used in the assay methods (as well as screens) of the present invention with preferred reporters providing conveniently detectable signals (eg. by spectroscopy). By way of example, a reporter gene may encode an enzyme which
10 catalyses a reaction which alters light absorption properties.

Other protocols include enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA), radioimmunoassay (RIA) and fluorescent activated cell sorting (FACS). A two-site, monoclonal-based immunoassay utilising monoclonal antibodies reactive to two non-
15 interfering epitopes may even be used. These and other assays are described, among other places, in Hampton R et al (1990, Serological Methods, A Laboratory Manual, APS Press, St Paul MN) and Maddox DE et al (1983, J Exp Med 15 8:121 1).

Examples of reporter molecules include but are not limited to (β -galactosidase, invertase,
20 green fluorescent protein, luciferase, chloramphenicol, acetyltransferase, (-glucuronidase, exo-glucanase and glucoamylase. Alternatively, radiolabelled or fluorescent tag-labelled nucleotides can be incorporated into nascent transcripts which are then identified when bound to oligonucleotide probes.

25 By way of further examples, a number of companies such as Pharmacia Biotech (Piscataway, NJ), Promega (Madison, WI), and US Biochemical Corp (Cleveland, OH) supply commercial kits and protocols for assay procedures. Suitable reporter molecules or labels include those radionuclides, enzymes, fluorescent, chemiluminescent, or chromogenic agents as well as substrates, cofactors, inhibitors, magnetic particles and
30 the like. Patents teaching the use of such labels include US-A-3817837; US-A-3850752; US-A-3939350; US-A-3996345; US-A-4277437; US-A-4275149 and US-A-4366241.

HOST CELLS

35 The term "host cell" - in relation to the present invention includes any cell that could comprise the target for the agent of the present invention.

172 174

Thus, a further embodiment of the present invention provides host cells transformed or transfected with a polynucleotide that is or expresses the target of the present invention. Preferably said polynucleotide is carried in a vector for the replication and expression of polynucleotides that are to be the target or are to express the target. The cells will be chosen to be compatible with the said vector and may for example be prokaryotic (for example bacterial), fungal, yeast or plant cells.

The gram negative bacterium *E. coli* is widely used as a host for heterologous gene expression. However, large amounts of heterologous protein tend to accumulate inside the cell. Subsequent purification of the desired protein from the bulk of *E. coli* intracellular proteins can sometimes be difficult.

In contrast to *E. coli*, bacteria from the genus *Bacillus* are very suitable as heterologous hosts because of their capability to secrete proteins into the culture medium. Other bacteria suitable as hosts are those from the genera *Streptomyces* and *Pseudomonas*.

Depending on the nature of the polynucleotide encoding the polypeptide of the present invention, and/or the desirability for further processing of the expressed protein, eukaryotic hosts such as yeasts or other fungi may be preferred. In general, yeast cells are preferred over fungal cells because they are easier to manipulate. However, some proteins are either poorly secreted from the yeast cell, or in some cases are not processed properly (e.g. hyperglycosylation in yeast). In these instances, a different fungal host organism should be selected.

Examples of suitable expression hosts within the scope of the present invention are fungi such as *Aspergillus* species (such as those described in EP-A-0184438 and EP-A-0284603) and *Trichoderma* species; bacteria such as *Bacillus* species (such as those described in EP-A-0134048 and EP-A-0253455), *Streptomyces* species and *Pseudomonas* species; and yeasts such as *Kluyveromyces* species (such as those described in EP-A-0096430 and EP-A-0301670) and *Saccharomyces* species. By way of example, typical expression hosts may be selected from *Aspergillus niger*, *Aspergillus niger* var. *tubigenis*, *Aspergillus niger* var. *awamori*, *Aspergillus aculeatis*, *Aspergillus nidulans*, *Aspergillus oryzae*, *Trichoderma reesei*, *Bacillus subtilis*, *Bacillus licheniformis*, *Bacillus amyloliquefaciens*, *Kluyveromyces lactis* and *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*.

The use of suitable host cells - such as yeast, fungal and plant host cells - may provide for post-translational modifications (e.g. myristoylation, glycosylation, truncation,

75

lapidation and tyrosine, serine or threonine phosphorylation) as may be needed to confer optimal biological activity on recombinant expression products of the present invention.

ORGANISM

5

The term "organism" in relation to the present invention includes any organism that could comprise the target according to the present invention and/or products obtained therefrom. Examples of organisms may include a fungus, yeast or a plant.

- 10 The term "transgenic organism" in relation to the present invention includes any organism that comprises the target according to the present invention and/or products obtained.

TRANSFORMATION OF HOST CELLS/HOST ORGANISMS

- 15 As indicated earlier, the host organism can be a prokaryotic or a eukaryotic organism. Examples of suitable prokaryotic hosts include *E. coli* and *Bacillus subtilis*. Teachings on the transformation of prokaryotic hosts is well documented in the art, for example see Sambrook *et al* (Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual, 2nd edition, 1989, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press) and Ausubel *et al.*, Current Protocols in Molecular Biology
20 (1995), John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

If a prokaryotic host is used then the nucleotide sequence may need to be suitably modified before transformation - such as by removal of introns.

- 25 In another embodiment the transgenic organism can be a yeast. In this regard, yeast have also been widely used as a vehicle for heterologous gene expression. The species *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* has a long history of industrial use, including its use for heterologous gene expression. Expression of heterologous genes in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* has been reviewed by Goodey *et al* (1987, Yeast Biotechnology, D R Berry *et al*, eds, pp 401-429, Allen and Unwin, London) and by King *et al* (1989, Molecular and
30 Cell Biology of Yeasts, E F Walton and G T Yarronton, eds, pp 107-133, Blackie, Glasgow).

- For several reasons *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* is well suited for heterologous gene
35 expression. First, it is non-pathogenic to humans and it is incapable of producing certain endotoxins. Second, it has a long history of safe use following centuries of commercial exploitation for various purposes. This has led to wide public acceptability. Third, the

173 130

extensive commercial use and research devoted to the organism has resulted in a wealth of knowledge about the genetics and physiology as well as large-scale fermentation characteristics of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*.

5 A review of the principles of heterologous gene expression in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* and secretion of gene products is given by E Hinchcliffe & E Kenny (1993, "Yeast as a vehicle for the expression of heterologous genes", *Yeasts*, Vol 5, Anthony H Rose and J Stuart Harrison, eds, 2nd edition, Academic Press Ltd.).

10 Several types of yeast vectors are available, including integrative vectors, which require recombination with the host genome for their maintenance, and autonomously replicating plasmid vectors.

In order to prepare the transgenic *Saccharomyces*, expression constructs are prepared
15 by inserting the nucleotide sequence into a construct designed for expression in yeast. Several types of constructs used for heterologous expression have been developed. The constructs contain a promoter active in yeast fused to the nucleotide sequence, usually a promoter of yeast origin, such as the GAL1 promoter, is used. Usually a signal sequence of yeast origin, such as the sequence encoding the SUC2 signal peptide, is used. A
20 terminator active in yeast ends the expression system.

For the transformation of yeast several transformation protocols have been developed. For example, a transgenic *Saccharomyces* according to the present invention can be prepared by following the teachings of Hinnen et al (1978, *Proceedings of the National*
25 *Academy of Sciences of the USA* 75, 1929); Beggs, J D (1978, *Nature*, London, 275, 104); and Ito, H et al (1983, *J Bacteriology* 153, 163-168).

The transformed yeast cells are selected using various selective markers. Among the markers used for transformation are a number of auxotrophic markers such as LEU2,
30 HIS4 and TRP1, and dominant antibiotic resistance markers such as aminoglycoside antibiotic markers, eg G418.

Another host organism is a plant. The basic principle in the construction of genetically modified plants is to insert genetic information in the plant genome so as to obtain a
35 stable maintenance of the inserted genetic material. Several techniques exist for inserting the genetic information, the two main principles being direct introduction of the genetic information and introduction of the genetic information by use of a vector system.

76

A review of the general techniques may be found in articles by Potrykus (Annu Rev Plant Physiol Plant Mol Biol [1991] 42:205-225) and Christou (Agro-Food-Industry Hi-Tech March/April 1994 17-27). Further teachings on plant transformation may be found in EP-A-0449375.

5

Thus, the present invention also provides a method of transforming a host cell with a nucleotide sequence that is to be the target or is to express the target. Host cells transformed with the nucleotide sequence may be cultured under conditions suitable for the expression of the encoded protein. The protein produced by a recombinant cell may be displayed on the surface of the cell. If desired, and as will be understood by those of skill in the art, expression vectors containing coding sequences can be designed with signal sequences which direct secretion of the coding sequences through a particular prokaryotic or eukaryotic cell membrane. Other recombinant constructions may join the coding sequence to nucleotide sequence encoding a polypeptide domain which will facilitate purification of soluble proteins (Kroll DJ et al (1993) DNA Cell Biol 12:441-53).

10
15

VARIANTS/HOMOLOGUES/DERIVATIVES

In addition to the specific amino acid sequences and nucleotide sequences mentioned herein, the present invention also encompasses the use of variants, homologue and derivatives thereof. Here, the term "homology" can be equated with "identity".

20

In the present context, an homologous sequence is taken to include an amino acid sequence which may be at least 75, 85 or 90% identical, preferably at least 95 or 98% identical. Although homology can also be considered in terms of similarity (i.e. amino acid residues having similar chemical properties/functions), in the context of the present invention it is preferred to express homology in terms of sequence identity.

25

Homology comparisons can be conducted by eye, or more usually, with the aid of readily available sequence comparison programs. These commercially available computer programs can calculate % homology between two or more sequences.

30

% homology may be calculated over contiguous sequences, i.e. one sequence is aligned with the other sequence and each amino acid in one sequence is directly compared with the corresponding amino acid in the other sequence, one residue at a time. This is called an "ungapped" alignment. Typically, such ungapped alignments are performed only over a relatively short number of residues.

35

Although this is a very simple and consistent method, it fails to take into consideration that, for example, in an otherwise identical pair of sequences, one insertion or deletion will cause the following amino acid residues to be put out of alignment, thus potentially resulting in a large reduction in % homology when a global alignment is performed. Consequently, most sequence comparison methods are designed to produce optimal alignments that take into consideration possible insertions and deletions without penalising unduly the overall homology score. This is achieved by inserting "gaps" in the sequence alignment to try to maximise local homology.

However, these more complex methods assign "gap penalties" to each gap that occurs in the alignment so that, for the same number of identical amino acids, a sequence alignment with as few gaps as possible - reflecting higher relatedness between the two compared sequences - will achieve a higher score than one with many gaps. "Affine gap costs" are typically used that charge a relatively high cost for the existence of a gap and a smaller penalty for each subsequent residue in the gap. This is the most commonly used gap scoring system. High gap penalties will of course produce optimised alignments with fewer gaps. Most alignment programs allow the gap penalties to be modified. However, it is preferred to use the default values when using such software for sequence comparisons. For example when using the GCG Wisconsin Bestfit package (see below) the default gap penalty for amino acid sequences is -12 for a gap and -4 for each extension.

Calculation of maximum % homology therefore firstly requires the production of an optimal alignment, taking into consideration gap penalties. A suitable computer program for carrying out such an alignment is the GCG Wisconsin Bestfit package (University of Wisconsin, U.S.A.; Devereux et al., 1984, *Nucleic Acids Research* 12:387). Examples of other software than can perform sequence comparisons include, but are not limited to, the BLAST package (see Ausubel et al., 1999 *ibid* - Chapter 18), FASTA (Atschul et al., 1990, *J. Mol. Biol.*, 403-410) and the GENWORKS suite of comparison tools. Both BLAST and FASTA are available for offline and online searching (see Ausubel et al., 1999 *ibid*, pages 7-58 to 7-60). However it is preferred to use the GCG Bestfit program.

A further useful reference is that found in *FEMS Microbiol Lett* 1999 May 15;174(2):247-50 (and a published erratum appears in *FEMS Microbiol Lett* 1999 Aug 1;177(1):187-8).

Although the final % homology can be measured in terms of identity, the alignment

process itself is typically not based on an all-or-nothing pair comparison. Instead, a scaled similarity score matrix is generally used that assigns scores to each pairwise comparison based on chemical similarity or evolutionary distance. An example of such a matrix commonly used is the BLOSUM62 matrix - the default matrix for the BLAST suite of programs. GCG Wisconsin programs generally use either the public default values or a custom symbol comparison table if supplied (see user manual for further details). It is preferred to use the public default values for the GCG package, or in the case of other software, the default matrix, such as BLOSUM62.

Once the software has produced an optimal alignment, it is possible to calculate % homology, preferably % sequence identity. The software typically does this as part of the sequence comparison and generates a numerical result.

The sequences may also have deletions, insertions or substitutions of amino acid residues which produce a silent change and result in a functionally equivalent substance. Deliberate amino acid substitutions may be made on the basis of similarity in polarity, charge, solubility, hydrophobicity, hydrophilicity, and/or the amphipathic nature of the residues as long as the secondary binding activity of the substance is retained. For example, negatively charged amino acids include aspartic acid and glutamic acid; positively charged amino acids include lysine and arginine; and amino acids with uncharged polar head groups having similar hydrophilicity values include leucine, isoleucine, valine, glycine, alanine, asparagine, glutamine, serine, threonine, phenylalanine, and tyrosine.

Conservative substitutions may be made, for example according to the Table below. Amino acids in the same block in the second column and preferably in the same line in the third column may be substituted for each other.

ALIPHATIC	Non-polar	G A P
		I L V
	Polar – uncharged	C S T M
		N Q
	Polar – charged	D E
		K R
AROMATIC		H F W Y

175 182

EXPRESSION VECTORS

5 The nucleotide sequence for use as the target or for expressing the target can be incorporated into a recombinant replicable vector. The vector may be used to replicate and express the nucleotide sequence in and/or from a compatible host cell. Expression may be controlled using control sequences which include promoters/enhancers and other expression regulation signals. Prokaryotic promoters and promoters functional in eukaryotic cells may be used. Tissue specific or stimuli specific promoters may be used.

10 Chimeric promoters may also be used comprising sequence elements from two or more different promoters described above.

The protein produced by a host recombinant cell by expression of the nucleotide sequence may be secreted or may be contained intracellularly depending on the sequence and/or the vector used. The coding sequences can be designed with signal sequences which direct secretion of the substance coding sequences through a particular prokaryotic or eukaryotic cell membrane.

15

FUSION PROTEINS

20

The target amino acid sequence may be produced as a fusion protein, for example to aid in extraction and purification. Examples of fusion protein partners include glutathione-S-transferase (GST), 6xHis, GAL4 (DNA binding and/or transcriptional activation domains) and (-galactosidase. It may also be convenient to include a proteolytic cleavage site

25 between the fusion protein partner and the protein sequence of interest to allow removal of fusion protein sequences. Preferably the fusion protein will not hinder the activity of the target.

The fusion protein may comprise an antigen or an antigenic determinant fused to the substance of the present invention. In this embodiment, the fusion protein may be a non-naturally occurring fusion protein comprising a substance which may act as an adjuvant in the sense of providing a generalised stimulation of the immune system. The antigen or antigenic determinant may be attached to either the amino or carboxy terminus of the substance.

30

35

In another embodiment of the invention, the amino acid sequence may be ligated to a heterologous sequence to encode a fusion protein. For example, for screening of peptide

78

libraries for agents capable of affecting the substance activity, it may be useful to encode a chimeric substance expressing a heterologous epitope that is recognized by a commercially available antibody.

5 THERAPY

The compounds of the present invention may be used as therapeutic agents – i.e. in therapy applications.

10 The term "therapy" includes curative effects, alleviation effects, and prophylactic effects.

The therapy may be on humans or animals, preferably females, more preferably female humans.

15 PHARMACEUTICAL COMPOSITIONS

The present invention provides a pharmaceutical composition, which comprises a compound according to the present invention and optionally a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, diluent or excipient (including combinations thereof).

20

The pharmaceutical compositions may be for human or animal usage in human and veterinary medicine and will typically comprise any one or more of a pharmaceutically acceptable diluent, carrier, or excipient. Acceptable carriers or diluents for therapeutic use are well known in the pharmaceutical art, and are described, for example, in

25 Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences, Mack Publishing Co. (A. R. Gennaro edit. 1985).

The choice of pharmaceutical carrier, excipient or diluent can be selected with regard to the intended route of administration and standard pharmaceutical practice. The pharmaceutical compositions may comprise as - or in addition to - the carrier, excipient or diluent any suitable binder(s), lubricant(s), suspending agent(s), coating agent(s),

30

solubilising agent(s).

Preservatives, stabilisers, dyes and even flavouring agents may be provided in the pharmaceutical composition. Examples of preservatives include sodium benzoate, sorbic acid and esters of p-hydroxybenzoic acid. Antioxidants and suspending agents may be

35

also used.

176 103

There may be different composition/formulation requirements dependent on the different delivery systems. By way of example, the pharmaceutical composition of the present invention may be formulated to be delivered using a mini-pump or by a mucosal route, for example, as a nasal spray or aerosol for inhalation or ingestible solution, or parenterally in which the composition is formulated by an injectable form, for delivery, by, for example, an intravenous, intramuscular or subcutaneous route. Alternatively, the formulation may be designed to be delivered by both routes.

Where the agent is to be delivered mucosally through the gastrointestinal mucosa, it should be able to remain stable during transit through the gastrointestinal tract: for example, it should be resistant to proteolytic degradation, stable at acid pH and resistant to the detergent effects of bile.

Where appropriate, the pharmaceutical compositions can be administered by inhalation, in the form of a suppository or pessary, as an intrauterine system, topically in the form of a lotion, solution, cream, ointment or dusting powder, by use of a skin patch, orally in the form of tablets containing excipients such as starch or lactose, or in capsules or ovules either alone or in admixture with excipients, or in the form of elixirs, solutions or suspensions containing flavouring or colouring agents, or they can be injected parenterally, for example intravenously, intramuscularly or subcutaneously. For parenteral administration, the compositions may be best used in the form of a sterile aqueous solution which may contain other substances, for example enough salts or monosaccharides to make the solution isotonic with blood. For buccal or sublingual administration the compositions may be administered in the form of tablets or lozenges which can be formulated in a conventional manner.

COMBINATION PHARMACEUTICAL

The compound of the present invention may be used in combination with one or more other active agents, such as one or more other pharmaceutically active agents.

By way of example, the compounds of the present invention may be used in combination with other STS inhibitors and/or other inhibitors such as an aromatase inhibitor (such as for example, 4-hydroxyandrostenedione (4-OHA)) and/or steroids – such as the naturally occurring sterosteroids dehydroepiandrosterone sulphate (DHEAS) and pregnenolone sulphate (PS) and/or other structurally similar organic compounds.

79

The compounds according to the invention may be used alone or in combination with a progestin. Preferably the compounds according to the invention are used in the absence of a progestin. Thus, in a preferred aspect the composition of the present invention is substantially free of progestins.

5

In addition, or in the alternative, the compound of the present invention may be used in combination with a biological response modifier.

The term biological response modifier ("BRM") includes cytokines, immune modulators, growth factors, haematopoiesis regulating factors, colony stimulating factors, chemotactic, haemolytic and thrombolytic factors, cell surface receptors, ligands, leukocyte adhesion molecules, monoclonal antibodies, preventative and therapeutic vaccines, hormones, extracellular matrix components, fibronectin, etc. For some applications, preferably, the biological response modifier is a cytokine. Examples of cytokines include: interleukins (IL) - such as IL-1, IL-2, IL-3, IL-4, IL-5, IL-6, IL-7, IL-8, IL-9, IL-10, IL-11, IL-12, IL-13, IL-14, IL-15, IL-16, IL-17, IL-18, IL-19; Tumour Necrosis Factor (TNF) - such as TNF- α ; Interferon alpha, beta and gamma; TGF- β . For some applications, preferably the cytokine is tumour necrosis factor (TNF). For some applications, the TNF may be any type of TNF - such as TNF- α , TNF- β , including derivatives or mixtures thereof. More preferably the cytokine is TNF- α . Teachings on TNF may be found in the art - such as WO-A-98/08870 and WO-A-98/13348.

ADMINISTRATION

Typically, a physician will determine the actual dosage which will be most suitable for an individual subject and it will vary with the age, weight and response of the particular patient. The dosages below are exemplary of the average case. There can, of course, be individual instances where higher or lower dosage ranges are merited.

The compositions of the present invention may be administered by direct injection. The composition may be formulated for parenteral, mucosal, intramuscular, intravenous, subcutaneous, intraocular or transdermal administration.

The specific dose level and frequency of dosage for any particular patient may be varied and will depend upon a variety of factors including the activity of the specific compound employed, the metabolic stability and length of action of that compound, the age, body

177
181

weight, general health, sex, diet, mode and time of administration, rate of excretion, drug combination, the severity of the particular condition, and the host undergoing therapy.

- Aside from the typical modes of delivery – indicated above – the term “administered” also includes delivery by techniques such as lipid mediated transfection, liposomes, immunoliposomes, lipofectin, cationic facial amphiphiles (CFAs) and combinations thereof. The routes for such delivery mechanisms include but are not limited to mucosal, nasal, oral, parenteral, gastrointestinal, topical, or sublingual routes.
- 10 The term “administered” includes but is not limited to delivery by a mucosal route, for example, as a nasal spray or aerosol for inhalation or as an ingestible solution; a parenteral route where delivery is by an injectable form, such as, for example, an intravenous, intramuscular or subcutaneous route.
- 15 Thus, for pharmaceutical administration, the STS inhibitors of the present invention can be formulated in any suitable manner utilising conventional pharmaceutical formulating techniques and pharmaceutical carriers, adjuvants, excipients, diluents etc. and usually for parenteral administration. Dosages may be given in single dose regimes, split dose regimes and/or in multiple dose regimes lasting over several days. For oral
- 20 administration they may be formulated in tablets, capsules, solution or suspension. Alternatively the compounds will be formulated for parenteral administration in a suitable parenterally administrable carrier and providing single daily dosage rates. Effective daily doses will, however, vary depending on inherent activity of the active ingredient and on the bodyweight of the patient, such variations being within the skill and judgement of the
- 25 physician.

CELL CYCLING

- 30 The compounds of the present invention may be useful in the method of treatment of a cell cycling disorder.

- As discussed in “Molecular Cell Biology” 3rd Ed. Lodish *et al.* pages 177-181 different eukaryotic cells can grow and divide at quite different rates. Yeast cells, for example, can divide every 120 min., and the first divisions of fertilised eggs in the embryonic cells of
- 35 sea urchins and insects take only 1530 min. because one large pre-existing cell is subdivided. However, most growing plant and animal cells take 10-20 hours to double in number, and some duplicate at a much slower rate. Many cells in adults, such as nerve
- 80

cells and striated muscle cells, do not divide at all; others, like the fibroblasts that assist in healing wounds, grow on demand but are otherwise quiescent.

Still, every eukaryotic cell that divides must be ready to donate equal genetic material to two daughter cells. DNA synthesis in eukaryotes does not occur throughout the cell division cycle but is restricted to a part of it before cell division.

The relationship between eukaryotic DNA synthesis and cell division has been thoroughly analysed in cultures of mammalian cells that were all capable of growth and division. In contrast to bacteria, it was found, eukaryotic cells spend only a part of their time in DNA synthesis, and it is completed hours before cell division (mitosis). Thus a gap of time occurs after DNA synthesis and before cell division; another gap was found to occur after division and before the next round of DNA synthesis. This analysis led to the conclusion that the eukaryotic cell cycle consists of an M (mitotic) phase, a G_1 phase (the first gap), the S (DNA synthesis) phase, a G_2 phase (the second gap), and back to M. The phases between mitoses (G_1 , S, and G_2) are known collectively as the interphase.

Many nondividing cells in tissues (for example, all quiescent fibroblasts) suspend the cycle after mitosis and just prior to DNA synthesis; such "resting" cells are said to have exited from the cell cycle and to be in the G_0 state.

It is possible to identify cells when they are in one of the three interphase stages of the cell cycle, by using a fluorescence-activated cell sorter (FACS) to measure their relative DNA content: a cell that is in G_1 (before DNA synthesis) has a defined amount x of DNA; during S (DNA replication), it has between x and $2x$; and when in G_2 (or M), it has $2x$ of DNA.

The stages of mitosis and cytokinesis in an animal cell are as follows

(a) Interphase. The G_2 stage of interphase immediately precedes the beginning of mitosis. Chromosomal DNA has been replicated and bound to protein during the S phase, but chromosomes are not yet seen as distinct structures. The nucleolus is the only nuclear substructure that is visible under light microscope. In a diploid cell before DNA replication there are two morphologic chromosomes of each type, and the cell is said to be $2n$. In G_2 , after DNA replication, the cell is $4n$. There are four copies of each chromosomal DNA. Since the sister chromosomes have not yet separated from each other, they are called sister chromatids.

178 ~~188~~

b) Early prophase. Centrioles, each with a newly formed daughter centriole, begin moving toward opposite poles of the cell; the chromosomes can be seen as long threads. The nuclear membrane begins to disaggregate into small vesicles.

5

(c) Middle and late prophase. Chromosome condensation is completed; each visible chromosome structure is composed of two chromatids held together at their centromeres. Each chromatid contains one of the two newly replicated daughter DNA molecules. The microtubular spindle begins to radiate from the regions just adjacent to the centrioles, which are moving closer to their poles. Some spindle fibres reach from pole to pole; most go to chromatids and attach at kinetochores.

10

(d) Metaphase. The chromosomes move toward the equator of the cell, where they become aligned in the equatorial plane. The sister chromatids have not yet separated.

15

(e) Anaphase. The two sister chromatids separate into independent chromosomes. Each contains a centromere that is linked by a spindle fibre to one pole, to which it moves. Thus one copy of each chromosome is donated to each daughter cell. Simultaneously, the cell elongates, as do the pole-to-pole spindles. Cytokinesis begins as the cleavage furrow starts to form.

20

(f) Telophase. New membranes form around the daughter nuclei; the chromosomes uncoil and become less distinct, the nucleolus becomes visible again, and the nuclear membrane forms around each daughter nucleus. Cytokinesis is nearly complete, and the spindle disappears as the microtubules and other fibres depolymerise. Throughout mitosis the "daughter" centriole at each pole grows until it is full-length. At telophase the duplication of each of the original centrioles is completed, and new daughter centrioles will be generated during the next interphase.

25

(g) Interphase. Upon the completion of cytokinesis, the cell enters the G₁ phase of the cell cycle and proceeds again around the cycle.

30

It will be appreciated that cell cycling is an extremely important cell process. Deviations from normal cell cycling can result in a number of medical disorders. Increased and/or unrestricted cell cycling may result in cancer. Reduced cell cycling may result in degenerative conditions. Use of the compound of the present invention may provide a means to treat such disorders and conditions.

35

-85

Thus, the compound of the present invention may be suitable for use in the treatment of cell cycling disorders such as cancers, including hormone dependent and hormone independent cancers.

5

In addition, the compound of the present invention may be suitable for the treatment of cancers such as breast cancer, ovarian cancer, endometrial cancer, sarcomas, melanomas, prostate cancer, pancreatic cancer etc. and other solid tumours.

10 For some applications, cell cycling is inhibited and/or prevented and/or arrested, preferably wherein cell cycling is prevented and/or arrested. In one aspect cell cycling may be inhibited and/or prevented and/or arrested in the G₂/M phase. In one aspect cell cycling may be irreversibly prevented and/or inhibited and/or arrested, preferably wherein cell cycling is irreversibly prevented and/or arrested.

15

By the term "irreversibly prevented and/or inhibited and/or arrested" it is meant after application of a compound of the present invention, on removal of the compound the effects of the compound, namely prevention and/or inhibition and/or arrest of cell cycling, are still observable. More particularly by the term "irreversibly prevented and/or inhibited and/or arrested" it is meant that when assayed in accordance with the cell cycling assay protocol presented herein, cells treated with a compound of interest show less growth after Stage 2 of the protocol I than control cells. Details on this protocol are presented below.

20

Thus, the present invention provides compounds which: cause inhibition of growth of oestrogen receptor positive (ER+) and ER negative (ER-) breast cancer cells *in vitro* by preventing and/or inhibiting and/or arresting cell cycling; and/or cause regression of nitroso-methyl urea (NMU)-induced mammary tumours in intact animals (i.e. not ovariectomised), and/or prevent and/or inhibit and/or arrest cell cycling in cancer cells; and/or act *in vivo* by preventing and/or inhibiting and/or arresting cell cycling and/or act as a cell cycling agonist.

30

CELL CYCLING ASSAY (PROTOCOL 6)

Procedure

35

Stage 1

MCF-7 breast cancer cells are seeded into multi-well culture plates at a density of 105 cells/well. Cells were allowed to attach and grown until about 30% confluent when they are treated as follows:

- 5 Control - no treatment
Compound of Interest (COI) 20 μ M

Cells are grown for 6 days in growth medium containing the COI with changes of medium/COI every 3 days. At the end of this period cell numbers were counted using a
10 Coulter cell counter.

Stage 2

After treatment of cells for a 6-day period with the COI cells are re-seeded at a density of
15 10⁴ cells/well. No further treatments are added. Cells are allowed to continue to grow for a further 6 days in the presence of growth medium. At the end of this period cell numbers are again counted.

CANCER

20

As indicated, the compounds of the present invention may be useful in the treatment of a cell cycling disorder. A particular cell cycling disorder is cancer.

25

Cancer remains a major cause of mortality in most Western countries. Cancer therapies developed so far have included blocking the action or synthesis of hormones to inhibit the growth of hormone-dependent tumours. However, more aggressive chemotherapy is currently employed for the treatment of hormone-independent tumours.

30

Hence, the development of a pharmaceutical for anti-cancer treatment of hormone dependent and/or hormone independent tumours, yet lacking some or all of the side-effects associated with chemotherapy, would represent a major therapeutic advance.

35

It is known that oestrogens undergo a number of hydroxylation and conjugation reactions after their synthesis. Until recently it was thought that such reactions were part of a metabolic process that ultimately rendered oestrogens water soluble and enhanced their elimination from the body. It is now evident that some hydroxy metabolites (e.g. 2-

82

hydroxy and 16 α -hydroxy) and conjugates (e.g. oestrone sulphate, E1S) are important in determining some of the complex actions that oestrogens have in the body.

Workers have investigated the formation of 2- and 16-hydroxylated oestrogens in relation to conditions that alter the risk of breast cancer. There is now evidence that factors which increase 2-hydroxylase activity are associated with a reduced cancer risk, while those increasing 16 α -hydroxylation may enhance the risk of breast cancer. Further interest in the biological role of estrogen metabolites has been stimulated by the growing body of evidence that 2-methoxyoestradiol is an endogenous metabolite with anti-mitotic properties. 2-methoxyoestrone-3-O-sulphamate (2-MeOE2) is formed from 2-hydroxy estradiol (2-OHE2) by catechol estrogen methyl transferase, an enzyme that is widely distributed throughout the body.

Workers have shown that *in vivo* 2-MeOE2 inhibits the growth of tumours arising from the subcutaneous injection of Meth A sarcoma, B16 melanoma or MDA-MB-435 estrogen receptor negative (ER-) breast cancer cells. It also inhibits endothelial cell proliferation and migration, and *in vitro* angiogenesis. It was suggested that the ability of 2-MeOE2 to inhibit tumour growth *in vivo* may be due to its ability to inhibit tumour-induced angiogenesis rather than direct inhibition of the proliferation of tumour cells.

The mechanism by which 2-MeOE2 exerts its potent anti-mitogenic and anti-angiogenic effects is still being elucidated. There is evidence that at high concentrations it can inhibit microtubule polymerisation and act as a weak inhibitor of colchicine binding to tubulin. Recently, however, at concentrations that block mitosis, tubulin filaments in cells were not found to be depolymerised but to have an identical morphology to that seen after taxol treatment. It is possible, therefore, that like taxol, a drug that is used for breast and ovarian breast cancer therapy, 2-MeOE2 acts by stabilising microtubule dynamics.

While the identification of 2-MeOE2 as a new therapy for cancer represents an important advance, the bioavailability of orally administered oestrogens is poor. Furthermore, they can undergo extensive metabolism during their first pass through the liver. As part of a research programme to develop a steroid sulphotase inhibitor for breast cancer therapy, oestrone-3-O-sulphamate (EMATE) was identified as a potent active site-directed inhibitor. Unexpectedly, EMATE proved to possess potent oestrogenic properties with its oral uterotrophic activity in rats being a 100-times higher than that of estradiol. Its enhanced oestrogenicity is thought to result from its absorption by red blood cells (rbc) which protects it from inactivation during its passage through the liver and which act as a

180 ~~181~~

reservoir for its slow release for a prolonged period of time. A number of A-ring modified analogues were synthesised and tested, including 2-methoxyoestrone-3-O-sulphamate. While this compound was equipotent with EMATE as a steroid sulphotase inhibitor, it was devoid of oestrogenicity.

5

We believe that the compound of the present invention provides a means for the treatment of cancers and, especially, breast cancer.

10 In addition or in the alternative the compound of the present invention may be useful in the blocking the growth of cancers including leukaemias and solid tumours such as breast, endometrium, prostate, ovary and pancreatic tumours.

THERAPY CONCERNING OESTROGEN

15 We believe that some of the compounds of the present invention may be useful in the control of oestrogen levels in the body – in particular in females. Thus, some of the compounds may be useful as providing a means of fertility control – such as an oral contraceptive tablet, pill, solution or lozenge. Alternatively, the compound could be in the form of an implant or as a patch.

20

Thus, the compounds of the present invention may be useful in treating hormonal conditions associated with oestrogen, in particular treating hormonal conditions associated with oestrogen deficiency.

25 In addition or in the alternative the compound of the present invention may be useful in treating hormonal conditions in addition to those associated with oestrogen. Hence, the compound of the present invention may also be capable of affecting hormonal activity and may also be capable of affecting an immune response.

30 NEURODEGENERATIVE DISEASES

We believe that some of the compounds of the present invention may be useful in the treatment of neurodegenerative diseases, and similar conditions.

35 By way of example, it is believed that STS inhibitors may be useful in the enhancing the memory function of patients suffering from illnesses such as amnesia, head injuries, Alzheimer's disease, epileptic dementia, presenil dementia, post traumatic dementia, senile

~~82~~

dementia, vascular dementia and post-stroke dementia or individuals otherwise seeking memory enhancement.

TH1

5

We believe that some of the compounds of the present invention may be useful in TH1 implications.

By way of example, it is believed that the presence of STS inhibitors within the
10 macrophage or other antigen presenting cells may lead to a decreased ability of sensitised T cells to mount a TH1 (high IL-2, IFN γ low IL-4) response. The normal regulatory influence of other steroids such as glucocorticoids would therefore predominate.

15 INFLAMMATORY CONDITIONS

We believe that some of the compounds of the present invention may be useful in treating inflammatory conditions – such as conditions associated with any one or more of:
autoimmunity, including for example, rheumatoid arthritis, type I and II diabetes, systemic
20 lupus erythematosus, multiple sclerosis, myasthenia gravis, thyroiditis, vasculitis, ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease, skin disorders e.g. psoriasis and contact dermatitis; graft versus host disease; eczema; asthma and organ rejection following transplantation.

By way of example, it is believed that STS inhibitors may prevent the normal physiological
25 effect of DHEA or related steroids on immune and/or inflammatory responses.

The compounds of the present invention may be useful in the manufacture of a medicament for revealing an endogenous glucocorticoid-like effect.

30 OTHER THERAPIES

It is also to be understood that the compound/composition of the present invention may have other important medical implications.

35 For example, the compound or composition of the present invention may be useful in the treatment of the disorders listed in WO-A-99/52890 – viz:

181

In addition, or in the alternative, the compound or composition of the present invention may be useful in the treatment of the disorders listed in WO-A-98/05635. For ease of reference, part of that list is now provided: cancer, inflammation or inflammatory disease, dermatological disorders, fever, cardiovascular effects, haemorrhage, coagulation and acute phase response, cachexia, anorexia, acute infection, HIV infection, shock states, graft-versus-host reactions, autoimmune disease, reperfusion injury, meningitis, migraine and aspirin-dependent anti-thrombosis; tumour growth, invasion and spread, angiogenesis, metastases, malignant, ascites and malignant pleural effusion; cerebral ischaemia, ischaemic heart disease, osteoarthritis, rheumatoid arthritis, osteoporosis, asthma, multiple sclerosis, neurodegeneration, Alzheimer's disease, atherosclerosis, stroke, vasculitis, Crohn's disease and ulcerative colitis; periodontitis, gingivitis; psoriasis, atopic dermatitis, chronic ulcers, epidermolysis bullosa; corneal ulceration, retinopathy and surgical wound healing; rhinitis, allergic conjunctivitis, eczema, anaphylaxis; restenosis, congestive heart failure, endometriosis, atherosclerosis or endosclerosis.

In addition, or in the alternative, the compound or composition of the present invention may be useful in the treatment of disorders listed in WO-A-98/07859. For ease of reference, part of that list is now provided: cytokine and cell proliferation/differentiation activity; immunosuppressant or immunostimulant activity (e.g. for treating immune deficiency, including infection with human immune deficiency virus; regulation of lymphocyte growth; treating cancer and many autoimmune diseases, and to prevent transplant rejection or induce tumour immunity); regulation of haematopoiesis, e.g. treatment of myeloid or lymphoid diseases; promoting growth of bone, cartilage, tendon, ligament and nerve tissue, e.g. for healing wounds, treatment of burns, ulcers and periodontal disease and neurodegeneration; inhibition or activation of follicle-stimulating hormone (modulation of fertility); chemotactic/chemokinetic activity (e.g. for mobilising specific cell types to sites of injury or infection); haemostatic and thrombolytic activity (e.g. for treating haemophilia and stroke); antiinflammatory activity (for treating e.g. septic shock or Crohn's disease); as antimicrobials; modulators of e.g. metabolism or behaviour, as analgesics; treating specific deficiency disorders; in treatment of e.g. psoriasis, in human or veterinary medicine.

In addition, or in the alternative, the composition of the present invention may be useful in the treatment of disorders listed in WO-A-98/09985. For ease of reference, part of that list is now provided: macrophage inhibitory and/or T cell inhibitory activity and thus, anti-inflammatory activity; anti-immune activity, i.e. inhibitory effects against a cellular and/or humoral immune response, including a response not associated with inflammation; inhibit

84

the ability of macrophages and T cells to adhere to extracellular matrix components and fibronectin, as well as up-regulated fas receptor expression in T cells; inhibit unwanted immune reaction and inflammation including arthritis, including rheumatoid arthritis, inflammation associated with hypersensitivity, allergic reactions, asthma, systemic lupus erythematosus, collagen diseases and other autoimmune diseases, inflammation associated with atherosclerosis, arteriosclerosis, atherosclerotic heart disease, reperfusion injury, cardiac arrest, myocardial infarction, vascular inflammatory disorders, respiratory distress syndrome or other cardiopulmonary diseases, inflammation associated with peptic ulcer, ulcerative colitis and other diseases of the gastrointestinal tract, hepatic fibrosis, liver cirrhosis or other hepatic diseases, thyroiditis or other glandular diseases, glomerulonephritis or other renal and urologic diseases, otitis or other oto-rhino-laryngological diseases, dermatitis or other dermal diseases, periodontal diseases or other dental diseases, orchitis or epididymo-orchitis, infertility, orchidal trauma or other immune-related testicular diseases, placental dysfunction, placental insufficiency, habitual abortion, eclampsia, pre-eclampsia and other immune and/or inflammatory-related gynaecological diseases, posterior uveitis, intermediate uveitis, anterior uveitis, conjunctivitis, chorioretinitis, uveoretinitis, optic neuritis, intraocular inflammation, e.g. retinitis or cystoid macular oedema, sympathetic ophthalmia, scleritis, retinitis pigmentosa, immune and inflammatory components of degenerative fundus disease, inflammatory components of ocular trauma, ocular inflammation caused by infection, proliferative vitreo-retinopathies, acute ischaemic optic neuropathy, excessive scarring, e.g. following glaucoma filtration operation, immune and/or inflammation reaction against ocular implants and other immune and inflammatory-related ophthalmic diseases, inflammation associated with autoimmune diseases or conditions or disorders where, both in the central nervous system (CNS) or in any other organ, immune and/or inflammation suppression would be beneficial, Parkinson's disease, complication and/or side effects from treatment of Parkinson's disease, AIDS-related dementia complex HIV-related encephalopathy, Devic's disease, Sydenham chorea, Alzheimer's disease and other degenerative diseases, conditions or disorders of the CNS, inflammatory components of stokes, post-polio syndrome, immune and inflammatory components of psychiatric disorders, myelitis, encephalitis, subacute sclerosing pan-encephalitis, encephalomyelitis, acute neuropathy, subacute neuropathy, chronic neuropathy, Guillain-Barre syndrome, Sydenham chora, myasthenia gravis, pseudo-tumour cerebri, Down's Syndrome, Huntington's disease, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, inflammatory components of CNS compression or CNS trauma or infections of the CNS, inflammatory components of muscular atrophies and dystrophies, and immune and inflammatory related diseases, conditions or disorders of the central and peripheral nervous systems, post-traumatic

182 708

inflammation, septic shock, infectious diseases, inflammatory complications or side effects of surgery, bone marrow transplantation or other transplantation complications and/or side effects, inflammatory and/or immune complications and side effects of gene therapy, e.g. due to infection with a viral carrier, or inflammation associated with AIDS, to suppress or inhibit a humoral and/or cellular immune response, to treat or ameliorate monocyte or leukocyte proliferative diseases, e.g. leukaemia, by reducing the amount of monocytes or lymphocytes, for the prevention and/or treatment of graft rejection in cases of transplantation of natural or artificial cells, tissue and organs such as cornea, bone marrow, organs, lenses, pacemakers, natural or artificial skin tissue.

COMPOUND PREPARATION

The compounds of the present invention may be prepared by reacting an appropriate alcohol with a suitable chloride. By way of example, the sulphamate compounds of the present invention may be prepared by reacting an appropriate alcohol with a suitable sulfamoyl chloride, of the formula $R_1R_2NSO_2Cl$.

Typical conditions for carrying out the reaction are as follows.

Sodium hydride and a sulfamoyl chloride are added to a stirred solution of the alcohol in anhydrous dimethyl formamide at 0°C. Subsequently, the reaction is allowed to warm to room temperature whereupon stirring is continued for a further 24 hours. The reaction mixture is poured onto a cold saturated solution of sodium bicarbonate and the resulting aqueous phase is extracted with dichloromethane. The combined organic extracts are dried over anhydrous $MgSO_4$. Filtration followed by solvent evaporation in vacuo and co-evaporated with toluene affords a crude residue which is further purified by flash chromatography.

Preferably, the alcohol is derivatised, as appropriate, prior to reaction with the sulfamoyl chloride. Where necessary, functional groups in the alcohol may be protected in known manner and the protecting group or groups removed at the end of the reaction.

Preferably, the sulphamate compounds are prepared according to the teachings of Page *et al* (1990 Tetrahedron 46; 2059-2068). Alternatively, the sulphamate compounds may be prepared in accordance with WO 96/05216 or WO 96/05217.

SUMMARY

7

In summation, the present invention provides novel compositions suitable for oral contraception, hormone replacement therapy, the inhibition of E1-STS as well as other therapeutic applications.

5

EXAMPLES

The present invention will now be described only by way of example with reference to the accompanying drawings in which:-

10

Figure 1 presents a flow chart;

Figure 2 presents a graph;

Figure 3 presents a graph;

Figure 4 presents a graph;

Figure 5 presents a graph;

15 Figure 6 presents a graph;

Figure 7 presents graphs;

Figure 8 presents graphs;

Figure 9 presents a graph;

Figure 10 presents a graph;

20 Figure 11 presents graphs;

The following compound(s) according to the present invention were prepared

Preparation of oestrone-3-sulphamate

25

Sodium hydride (60% dispersion; 2 eq) and sulphamoyl chloride (2 eq) were added to a stirred solution of oestrone (1 eq) in anhydrous dimethyl formamide at 0°C. Subsequently, the reaction was allowed to warm to room temperature whereupon stirring was continued for a further 24 hours.

30

The reaction mixture was poured onto a cold saturated solution of sodium bicarbonate and the resulting aqueous phase was extracted with dichloromethane. The combined organic extracts were dried over anhydrous MgSO₄. Filtration followed solvent evaporation in vacuo and co-evaporation with toluene afforded a crude residue which is further purified by

35

flash chromatography.

Analysis showed the following data:

183
189

$\delta^1\text{H}$ (270MHz; CD_3OD): 0.91 (s, 3H, $\text{C}_{15}\text{-Me}$), 1.40-2.55 (series of m, 13H), 2.90-2.92 (m, 2H), 7.04 (br d, 2H, $J=10.44\text{Hz}$), 7.33 (br d, 1H, $J=8.42\text{Hz}$).

5 $\delta^{13}\text{C}$ (67.8MHz; CD_3OD): 14.53 (q, $\text{C}_{15}\text{-Me}$), 22.80 (t), 27.24 (t), 27.73 (t), 30.68 (t), 33.05 (t), 37.01 (t), 39.76 (d), 45.73 (s, C_{13}), 51.86 (d), 120.76 (d), 123.54 (d), 127.89 (d), 139.33 (s), 150.27 (s), 223.87 (s, C=O).

10 m/z (%): 349 (9) (m^+), 270 (100), 213 (26), 185 (43), 172 (31), 159 (21), 146 (36), 91 (33), 69 (37), 57 (73), 43 (56), 29 (24).

Microanalysis:

	C	H	N
Expected:	61.87%	6.63%	4.01%
15 Found:	61.90%	6.58%	3.95%

Studies with Oestradiol Sulfamate (J995)

20 Technology

Oestradiol Sulfamate (J995) was investigated with respect to its hormonal properties *in vitro* and *in vivo*. *In vitro* studies included the evaluation of its specific binding to oestrogen receptors using cytosolic preparations of uterine tissue of rats and mice and
25 MCF-7 tumor cells. *In vivo* studies were performed on several animal species including intact and ovariectomised rats and cynomolgus monkeys. These species served for detailed pharmacodynamic and pharmacokinetic studies at parenteral and oral administration of the compound.

30 Studies in the human were performed with oral administration of the compound in postmenopausal women. Several doses at single and multiple administration were evaluated. *In vitro* studies were performed with solutions in oily vehicles for parenteral administration. Oral treatment was performed with suspensions of crystalline J995 in aqueous vehicles. Clinical studies were performed with amorphous drug substance
35 galenically formulated with a mixture of conventional ingredients as capsules or tablets.

In vitro studies revealed that J995 per se has no affinity to the estrogen receptor. There

86

was no specific binding of radioactively labelled J995 to the estrogen receptor of mice, rats, and the human. A huge excess of J995 was unable to displace specifically bound radioactively labelled Oestradiol. Both findings are strong evidence that J995 exerts oestrogenic effects after transformation from an hormonally inactive into an hormonally active molecule. The prodrug J995, or its main metabolite Oestrone Sulfamate (EMATE), is hydrolysed to sulfamic acid and the natural oestrogenic hormones Oestradiol and Oestrone, respectively (Fig. 1).

Due to preferential transport in erythrocytes the prodrug and J995 has peculiar pharmacokinetic properties. J995 does not circulate in the plasma fraction of blood in as do conventional oestrogens, but an amount of 98-99% of J995 circulates in the erythrocyte compartment. This erythrocyte transport leads to much reduced hepatic hormone action and extraction at first liver passage and to long lasting release of the J995 from erythrocytes which function as a depot.

Advantages of J995 with respect to the oral oestrogen therapy:

- **Reduction of individual variation of blood levels (Fig. 2 and 3):**

The gold standard of oral oestrogen therapy is ethinyl estradiol. This compound does not lead to well defined blood levels (Fig. 4). The disadvantage of this individual variation is the necessity to administer higher doses than necessary in most individuals in order to achieve a acceptable rate of successful treatments.

- **Reduction of oestrogen dose and load of active metabolites which are suspected to promote the growth of some hormone dependent tumours:**

The conventional oral oestrogen replacement therapy with the so called conjugated oestrogens, oestradiol, oestradiol valerate or oestrone sulfate leads to a large pool of oestrone sulphate in the circulation. The hydrolysis of some of this metabolite leads to the therapeutically relevant blood levels of oestrone and oestradiol. However, oestrone sulphate has the disadvantage that it is particularly actively hydrolysed by sulfatase in breast tumour tissue which may generate potentially growth promoting oestrogens. J995, in relation to its dose, leads to higher and much longer lasting oestradiol levels than Oestradiol Valerate at the same dose (Fig. 6, 7). The *downstream* arising metabolite oestrone sulphate stays by at least factor 10 lower than under Oestradiol Valerate treatment (Fig. 5).

184 190

- **Reduction of hepatic estrogenic effects:**

A high dose of oestrogen is essential for conventional oral oestrogen therapy in order to cope with the substantial hepatic loss of hormone. The drawback of this high dose is an unfavourable effect on oestrogen regulated hepatic functions. These include effect on factors of the hemostatic system and related thromboembolic disorders, elevation of angiotensinogen in the circulation and subsequent effects on adrenal, renal, and vascular functions, changes of bile secretion, and lipid metabolism. The liver bypassing mechanism of action of J995 and the ultralow dose strategy according to this invention avoids the corresponding undesired effects of climacteric oestrogen treatment. Orally administered J995 reaches the erythrocyte pool to almost 100%. Far more than 50% of this prodrug is appearing as oestrone and oestradiol in the circulation (Fig. 11). This permits a much reduced dose compared to conventional oral oestrogen therapy per time unit.

- **Achievement of constant blood levels:**

Blood levels of oestrogens fluctuate from day to day under conventional daily oral oestrogen treatment (Fig. 5, 6, 7) whereas J995 leads to very constant, long lasting blood levels (Fig. 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10). Figure 9 shows almost constant oestrone sulphate levels which reflect the upstream generation of oestradiol and oestrone after 14 days of treatment with J995 at a very low dose of 100µg per day in the wash out phase over 144 hours.

- **Effects of Oestradiol Sulphamate in oestrogen deficient bones:**

Constant and well defined blood levels as described here cannot be achieved with the established oral oestrogen therapy. J995 allows a precise osteoprotective treatment just below the threshold which leads to endometrial growth. The absence of endometrial effects permits, in a preferred aspect, the use J995 without the simultaneous administration of progestins.

Improvements which can be reached with an oestrogen only preparation for oestrogen replacement therapy based on J995

- **Bleeding free therapy:**

The rationale of a combined oestrogen/progestin treatment is the control of endometrial proliferation which represents a risk of endometrial cancer development. The price for this protective essential effect is quite substantial. Both the cyclic and the continuous

87

combined treatment lead to uterine bleedings which are probably the most important reason to discontinue the oestrogen replacement therapy.

- **Effects on wellbeing:**

- 5 Another established negative aspect of this treatment is an impairment of the positive effects which oestrogens exert on the wellbeing of climacteric women.

- **Breast:**

- 10 Question are raised by the proliferative effects of progestins in the breast in analogy to the effects of progesterone in pregnancy. The concern about these effects is related to their potential role in the development of mammary cancer.

- **Metabolic side effects:**

- 15 Progestins, as progesterone itself, have important effects on a wide spectrum of metabolic functions. These include the secretion of insulin and insulin resistance, which is reduced, and effects on the lipid metabolism. Corresponding effects represent undesired effects in the context of oestrogen replacement therapy.

Significance of oestrogen replacement therapy:

20

- Women have a constant loss of bone mass after the cessation of ovarian oestrogen secretion after the menopause. Due to the fact that life expectancy of women is very high and still increasing it is mandatory to prevent bone loss and the resulting skeletal fragility. This is by far the most important risk factor for disability and also for morbidity, and mortality at high age.
- 25

All publications and patents mentioned in the above specification are herein incorporated by reference.

30

- Various modifications and variations of the present invention will be apparent to those skilled in the art without departing from the scope and spirit of the invention. Although the invention has been described in connection with specific preferred embodiments, it should be understood that the invention as claimed should not be unduly limited to such specific embodiments. Indeed, various modifications of the described modes for carrying
- 35

185
TAT

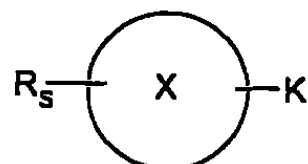
out the invention which are obvious to those skilled in chemistry, biology or related fields are intended to be within the scope of the following claims.

88

CLAIMS

1. A pharmaceutical composition comprising

5 (i) a compound of Formula (I)



Formula I

wherein: X is a hydrocarbyl ring having at least 4 atoms in the ring; K is a hydrocarbyl group; Rs is a sulphamate group;

10 (ii) optionally admixed with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, diluent, excipient or adjuvant.

wherein the compound is present in an amount to provide a dosage of no greater than 200 µg/day.

15 2. A pharmaceutical composition according to claim 1 wherein the compound is present in an amount to provide a dosage of from 10 to 200 µg/day.

3. A pharmaceutical composition according to claim 1 or 2 wherein the compound is present in an amount to provide a dosage of from 50 to 200 µg/day.

20 4. A pharmaceutical composition according to claim 1 or 2 wherein the compound is present in an amount to provide a dosage of from 20 to 50 µg/day.

5. A pharmaceutical composition according to claim 1 wherein the compound is present in an amount no greater than 200 µg/dose.

25

6. A pharmaceutical composition according to claim 1 wherein the compound is present in an amount no greater than 1 mg/dose.

30 7. A pharmaceutical composition according to claim 1 wherein the compound is present in an amount no greater than 4 mg/dose.

8. A pharmaceutical composition according to any one of the preceding claims wherein X in combination with K mimics a steroidal structure.

186
K92

9. A pharmaceutical composition according to any one of the preceding claims wherein K is a cyclic group.

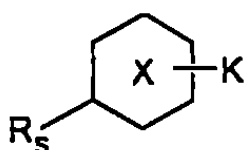
5 10. A pharmaceutical composition according to any one of the preceding claims wherein X is a six-membered ring.

11. A pharmaceutical composition according to any one of the preceding claims wherein the ring X has six carbon atoms in the ring.

10

12. A pharmaceutical composition according to any one of the preceding claims wherein the compound is of Formula II

Formula II



wherein each of R_s , X and K are as defined in claim 1.

15 13. A pharmaceutical composition according to any one of the preceding claims wherein X in combination with K is a steroidal ring structure.

14. A pharmaceutical composition according to any one of the preceding claims wherein group K and ring X are a steroid ring structure or a substituted derivative thereof.

20

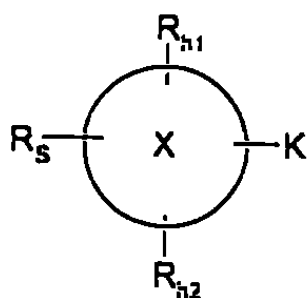
15. A pharmaceutical composition according to claim 14 wherein the R_s group is at position 3 of the ring X.

25 16. A pharmaceutical composition according to any one of the preceding claims wherein R_s is a sulphamate group.

17. A pharmaceutical composition according to any one of the preceding claims wherein the compound is of Formula III

89

Formula III



wherein X, K and Rs are as defined in claim 1; and wherein Rh1 is an optional halo group; Rh2 is an optional halo group; at least one of Rh1 and Rh2 is present

18. A pharmaceutical composition according to claim 17 wherein Rh1 is at position 2 of the ring X.
19. A pharmaceutical composition according to claim 17 or 18 wherein Rh2 is at position 4 of the ring X.
20. A composition according to any one of the preceding claims for use in medicine.
21. Use of a composition according to any one of claims 1 to 19 in the manufacture of a medicament for use in oral contraception.
22. Use of a composition according to any one of claims 1 to 19 in the manufacture of a medicament for use in hormone replacement therapy.
23. Use of a composition according to any one of claims 1 to 19 in the manufacture of a medicament for bone protecting hormone replacement therapy without endometrial stimulation.
24. Use of a composition according to any one of claims 1 to 19 in the manufacture of a medicament for use in the therapy of a condition or disease associated with STS.
25. Use of a composition according to any one of claims 1 to 19 in the manufacture of a medicament for use in the therapy of a condition or disease associated with adverse STS levels.

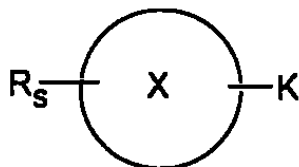
187 43

ABSTRACT

COMPOSITION

5

There is provided a pharmaceutical composition comprising (i) a compound of the formula



10

wherein: X is a hydrocarbyl ring having at least 4 atoms in the ring; K is a hydrocarbyl group; R_s is a sulphamate group; (ii) optionally admixed with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, diluent, excipient or adjuvant, wherein the compound is present in an amount to provide a dosage of no greater than 200 µg/day.

90

**Main routes of biotransformation of estradiol valerate vs
estradiol sulfamate (J995)**

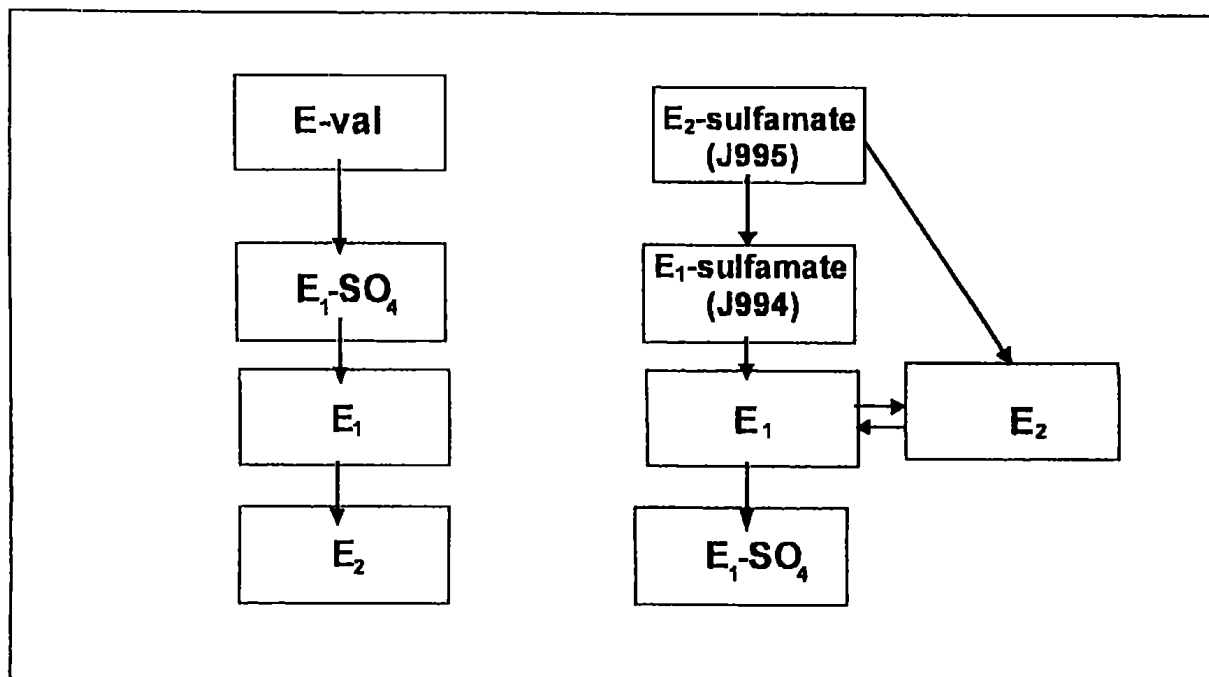


Fig 1

Course of plasma estrone in menopausal women (n=6)
after a single oral dose of
1mg of Estradiol Sulfamate (J995)

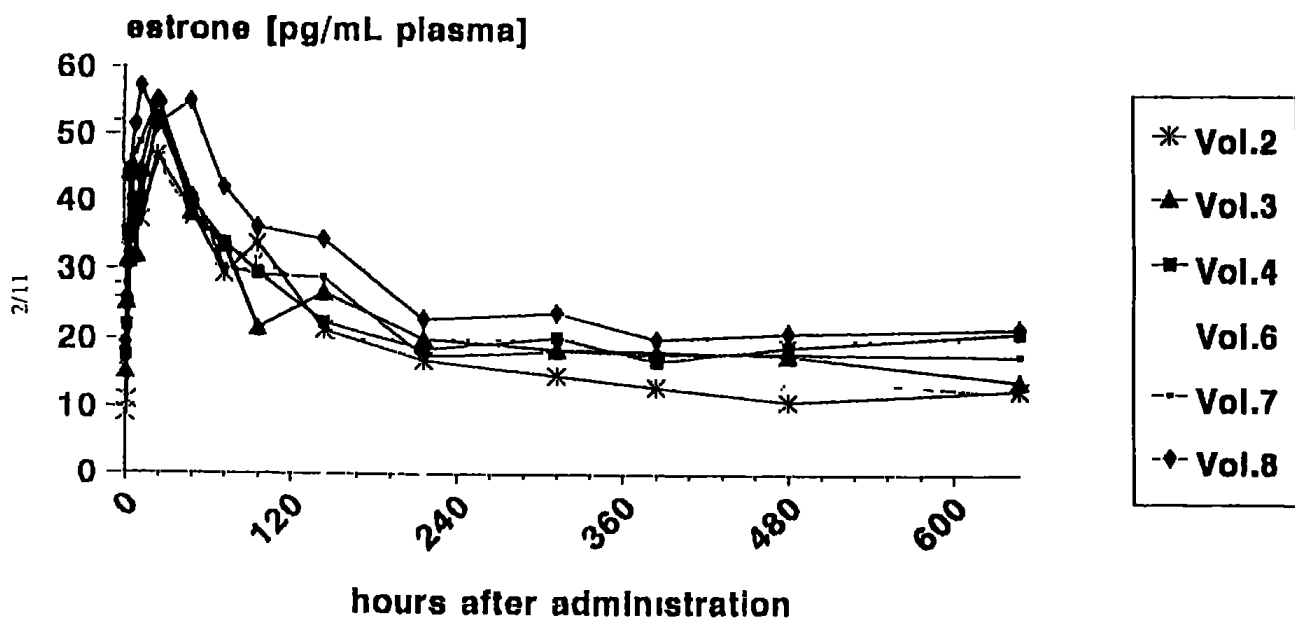


Fig 2

Course of plasma estrone in menopausal women (n=6)
after a single oral dose of
4mg of Estradiol Sulfamate (J995)

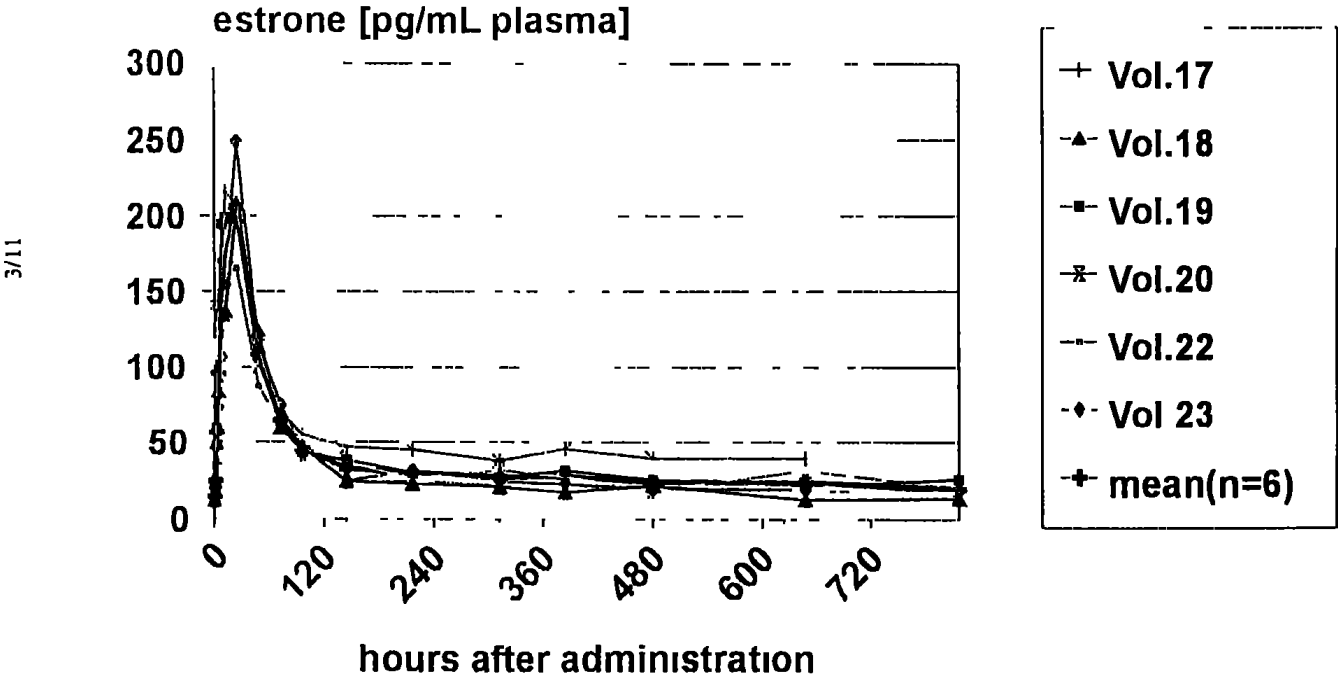


Fig 3

45

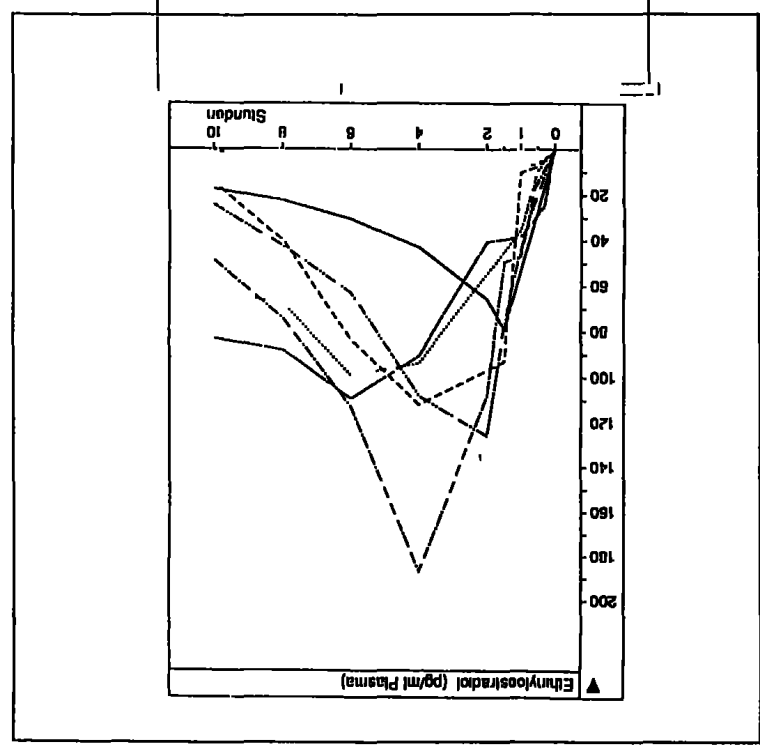
161

Goldzieher JW et al , Am Obst Gyn 160/5 (1989) 1260-1264

11/1999

197

Fig 4



Individual variation in plasma levels after a single oral dose (50µg) of ethinylestradiol given under rigidly standardized conditions

11/4

Plasma estrone sulfate in menopausal women:
Comparison between a single oral dose of 2 mg Estradiol
Sulfamate (J995) and multiple oral doses of 2 mg Estradiol
Valerate (E₂V)

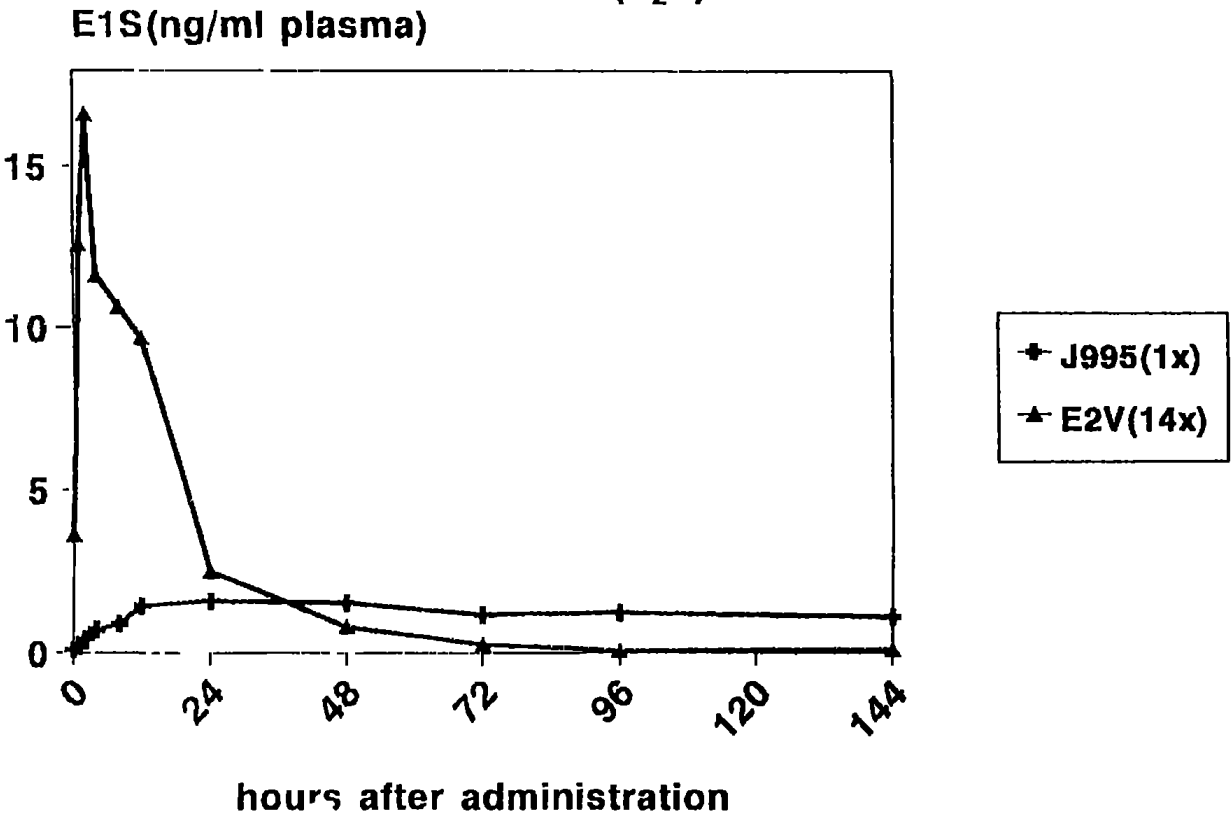
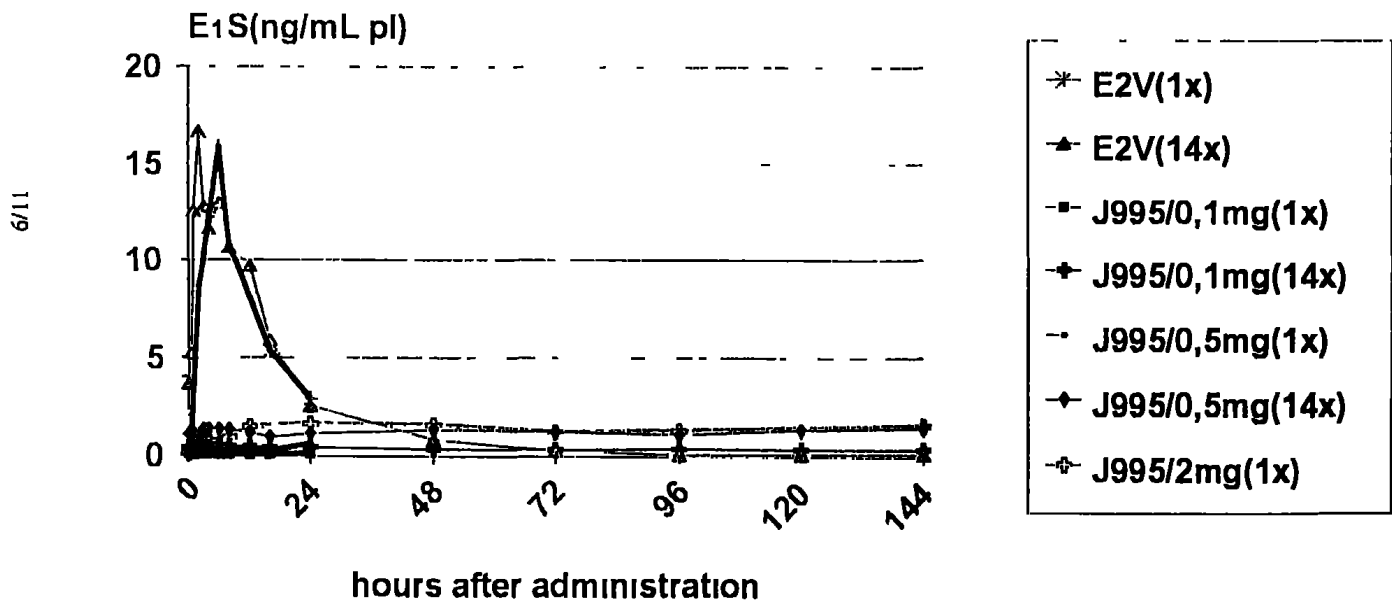


Fig 5

56/

193 96

Course of plasma estrone sulfate in menopausal women (n=6)
after various oral doses of
Estradiol Sulfamate (J995) and 2mg Estradiol Valerate (E2V)



Course of plasma estrone and estradiol in menopausal women (n=6) after a single oral dose of 2mg Estradiol sulfamate (J995) and 2mg Estradiol valerate (E₂V)

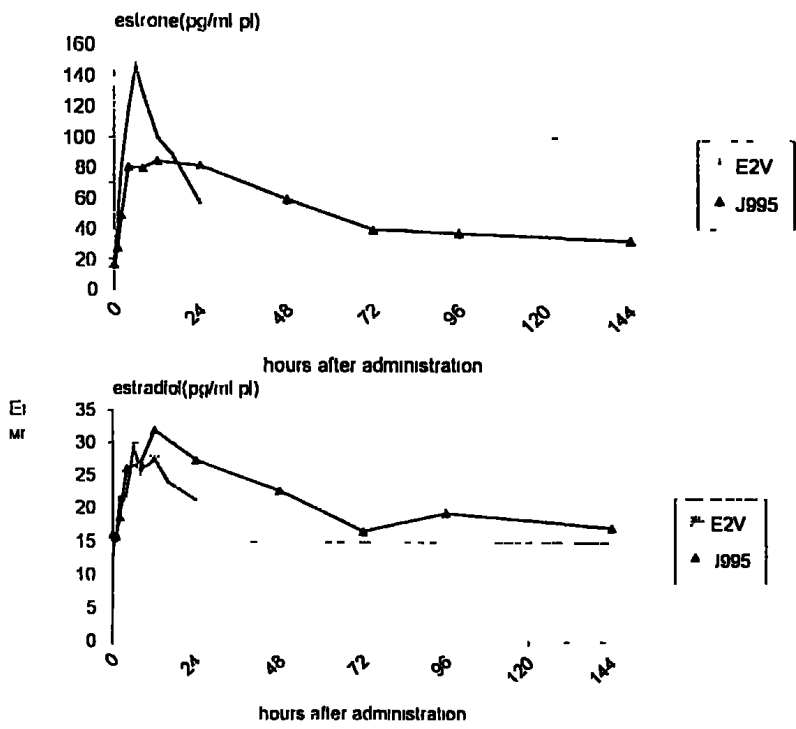


Fig 7

Cours of plasma estrone and estradiol in menopausal women (n=6) after a single oral dose of placebo, 0.5mg, 1mg, 2mg, 4mg, 8mg of Estradiol Sulfamate (J995)

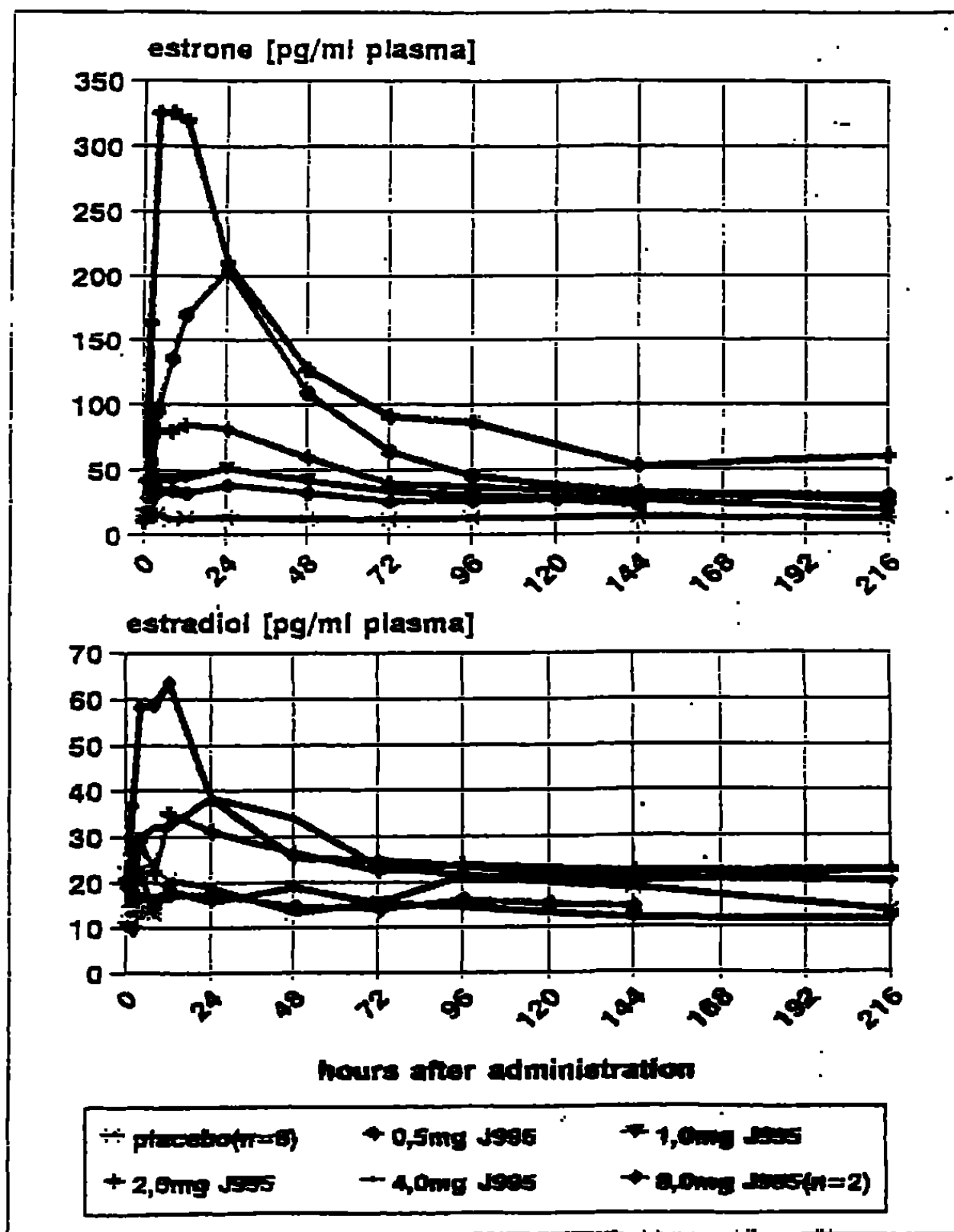


Fig 8

Course of plasma estrone sulfate (E1S) in menopausal women (n=6)
after multiple oral doses of
100µg of Estradiol Sulfamate (J995)

196

9/11

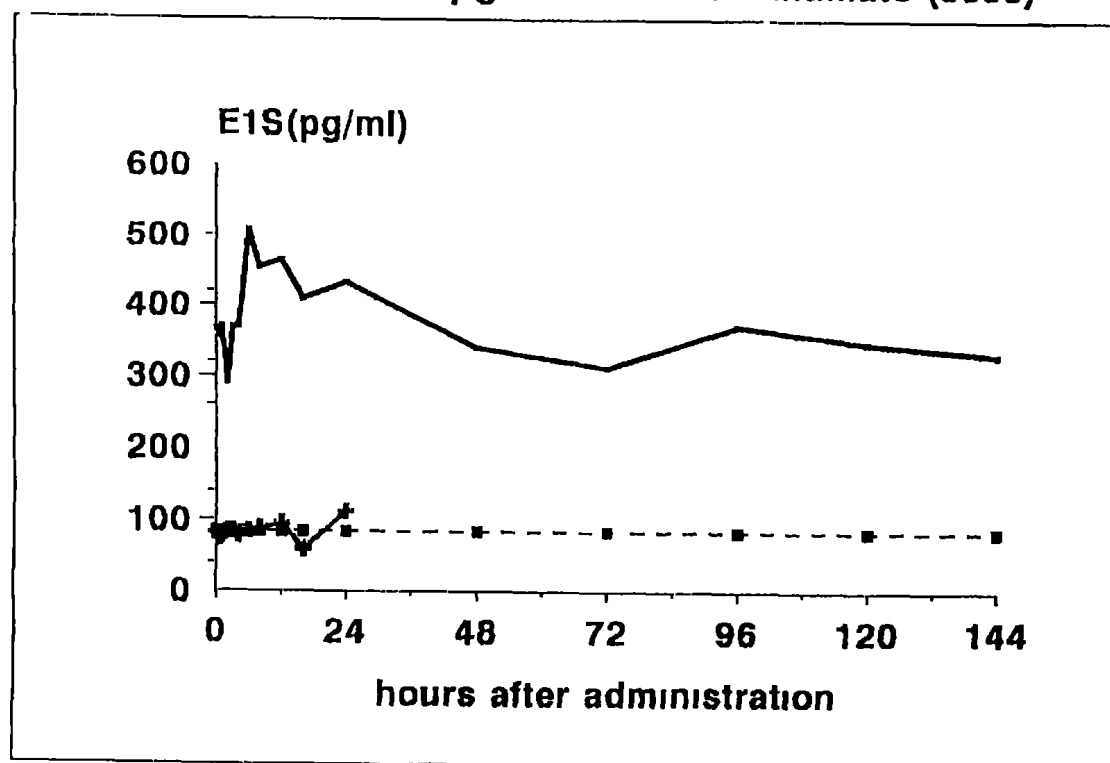
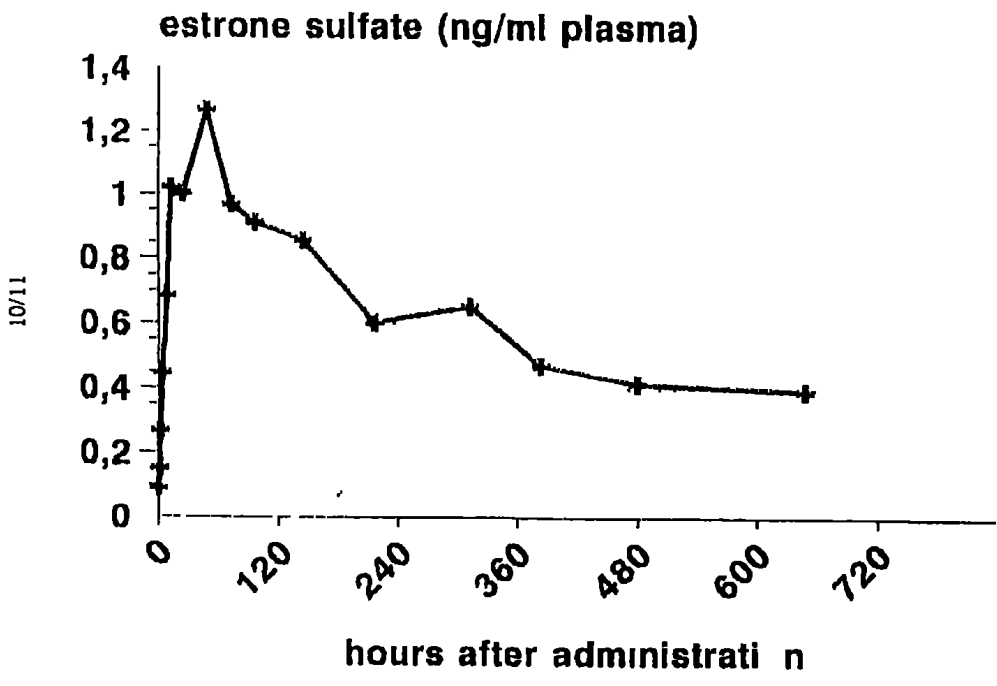


Fig 9

Course of plasma estrone sulfate in menopausal women (n=6)
after single oral doses of
2mg of Estradiol Sulfamate(J995)

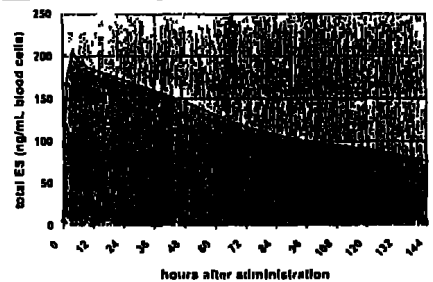
197



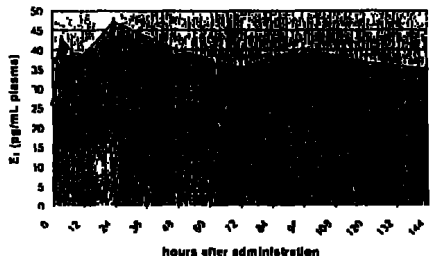
* 2,0mg J995

Fig 10

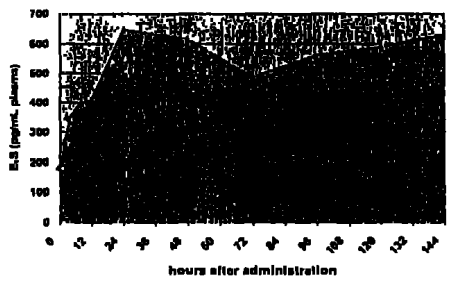
Estimation of oral bioavailability of estradiol sulfamate (J995) at a single oral dose of 0.5 mg



Erythrocyte conc Ca 200 ng/mL erythrocytes/ca
 100µg/L blood
 ≈ 500 µg/ 5L blood



Clearance of E₁ 40 pg/ml over 5 days
 *calculated 40 ng/l over 5 days
 1870 l x 40 ng/l /day
 374 µg/ 5 days



Clearance of E₁S 700 pg/ml over 5 days
 *calculated 700 ng/l over 5 days
 110 l x 700 ng/l /day
 385 µg/ 5 days

*Longcope C and Williams KIH
 J Clin Endocrinol Metab 38 (1974) 602-607

Fig 11

205

199

LOS ESTADOS UNIDOS DE AMERICA

**A TODOS AQUELLOS A QUIENES LA PRESENTE
VINIERE:**

DEPARTAMENTO DE COMERCIO DE LOS ESTADOS UNIDOS
Oficina de Patentes y Marcas de los Estados Unidos

Enero 29 ,2001

Por la presente se certifica que lo que obra anexo a ésta es copia fiel de los registros en la Oficina de Patentes y Marcas de los Estados Unidos de aquellos escritos de la solicitud de patente más adelante identificada que reunió los requisitos para que se le concediera una fecha de presentación sobre la base de 35 USC 111.

Número de Solicitud: 60/218,730

Fecha de Presentación: Julio 17,2000

Por autoridad del
Comisionado de Patentes y Marcas

H. PHILLIPS
Funcionario certificante

(Hay un sello-objeto)

102

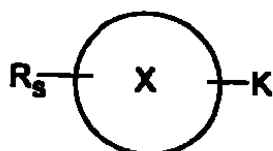
200 206

REIVINDICACIONES

1. Una composición farmacéutica que comprende

(i) un compuesto de la fórmula (I)

(I) a compound of Formula (I)



Formula I

en la cual: X es un anillo de hidrocarbilo con por lo menos 4 átomos en el anillo; K es un grupo hidrocarbilo; Rs es un grupo sulfamato;

(ii) optativamente mezclado con un vehículo, diluyente, excipiente o adyuvante farmacéuticamente aceptable,

donde el compuesto está presente en una cantidad que produce una dosis de no más de 200 mg/día.

2. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con la reivindicación 1 en la cual el compuesto está presente en una cantidad que produce una dosis de 10 a 200 mg/día.

3. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con la reivindicación 1 ó 2 en la cual el compuesto está presente en una cantidad que produce una dosis de 50 a 200 mg/día.

4. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con la reivindicación 1 ó 2 en la cual el compuesto está presente en una cantidad que produce una dosis de 20 a 50 mg/día.

103

201 ~~427~~

5. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con la reivindicación 1 en la cual el compuesto está presente en una cantidad que produce una dosis de no más de 200 mg/día.

5 6. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con la reivindicación 1 en la cual el compuesto está presente en una cantidad que produce una dosis de no más de 1 mg/dosis.

10 7. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con la reivindicación 1 en la cual el compuesto está presente en una cantidad que produce una dosis de no más de 4 mg/dosis.

15 8. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con cualquiera de las reivindicaciones precedentes, en la cual X en combinación con K imita una estructura esteroide.

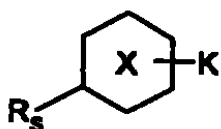
9. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con cualquiera de las reivindicaciones precedentes, en la cual K es un grupo cíclico.

20 10. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con cualquiera de las reivindicaciones precedentes, en la cual X es un anillo de seis miembros.

tot

11. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con cualquiera de las reivindicaciones precedentes, en la cual el anillo X tiene seis átomos de carbono en el anillo.

12. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con cualquiera de las reivindicaciones precedentes, en la cual el compuesto es de la Fórmula II.



Formula II

en la cual cada uno de Rs, X y K son como se los definiera en la reivindicación 1.

13. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con cualquiera de las reivindicaciones precedentes, en la cual X en combinación con K es una estructura de anillo esteroide.

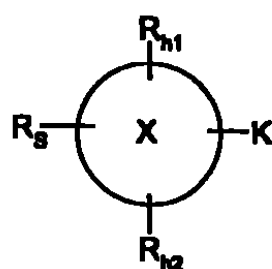
14. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con cualquiera de las reivindicaciones precedentes, en la cual el grupo K y el anillo X constituyen una estructura de anillo esteroide o un derivado sustituido de la misma.

203 409

15. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con la reivindicación 14 en la cual el grupo Rs está en la posición 3 del anillo X.

16. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con cualquiera de las reivindicaciones precedentes, en la cual Rs es un grupo sulfamato.

17. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con cualquiera de las reivindicaciones precedentes, en la cual el compuesto es de la fórmula III



Formula III

15 en la cual X, K y Rs son como se los definiera en la reivindicación 1, y donde Rh1 es un grupo halo optativo; Rh2 es un grupo halo optativo; por lo menos uno de Rh1 y Rh2 está presente.

18. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con la reivindicación 17, en la cual Rh1 está en la posición 2 del anillo X.

19. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con la reivindicación 17 ó 18 en la cual Rh2 está presente en la posición 4 del anillo X.

1001

204
210

20. Una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con cualquiera de las reivindicaciones precedentes para usar en medicina.

5 21. El uso de una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con cualquiera de las reivindicaciones 1 a 19 en la elaboración de un medicamento para usar en la anticoncepción oral.

10 22. El uso de una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con cualquiera de las reivindicaciones 1 a 19 en la elaboración de un medicamento para usar en terapia de reemplazo hormonal.

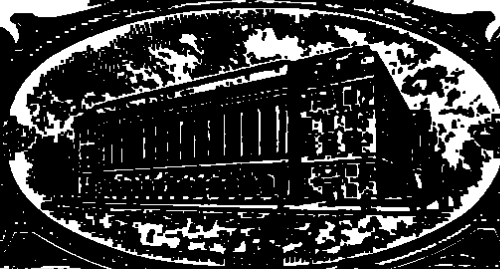
15 23. El uso de una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con cualquiera de las reivindicaciones 1 a 19 en la elaboración de un medicamento para la terapia de reemplazo hormonal para la protección ósea sin estimulación del endometrio.

20 24. El uso de una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con cualquiera de las reivindicaciones 1 a 19 en la elaboración de un medicamento para usar en la terapia de un trastorno o enfermedad asociada con STS.

25. El uso de una composición farmacéutica de acuerdo con cualquiera de las reivindicaciones 1 a 19 en la elaboración de un medicamento para usar en la terapia de un trastorno o enfermedad asociada con niveles adversos de STS.

107

PA 388624



THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

TO ALL TO WHOM THESE PRESENTS SHALL COME:

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

United States Patent and Trademark Office

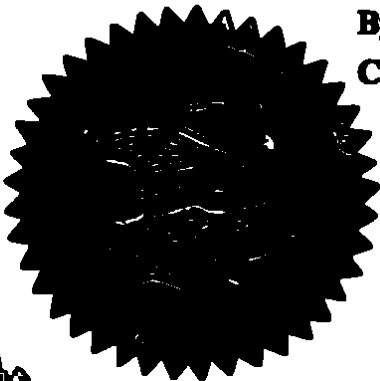
January 29, 2001

THIS IS TO CERTIFY THAT ANNEXED HERETO IS A TRUE COPY FROM THE RECORDS OF THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE OF THOSE PAPERS OF THE BELOW IDENTIFIED PATENT APPLICATION THAT MET THE REQUIREMENTS TO BE GRANTED A FILING DATE UNDER 35 USC 111.

APPLICATION NUMBER: 60/218,730

FILING DATE: July 17, 2000

**By Authority of the
COMMISSIONER OF PATENTS AND TRADEMARKS**



H. Phillips
H. PHILLIPS
Certifying Officer

205 21

108

U-18-U

A/Pru

206

Approved for use through 04/1/98 OMB 0651-0037

Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

PROVISIONAL APPLICATION COVER SHEET

This is a request for filing a PROVISIONAL APPLICATION under 37 CFR 1.53(b)(2).

Docket Number		674548-2001		Type a plus sign (+) inside this box	
INVENTOR(S)/APPLICANT(S)					
LAST NAME	FIRST NAME	MIDDLE INITIAL	RESIDENCE (CITY AND EITHER STATE OR FOREIGN COUNTRY)		
POTTER	Barry	Victor Lloyd	95 DOVERS PARK, BATHFORD, BATH, BA1 7UE, UNITED KINGDOM		
REED	Michael	John	42 Wimborne Gardens, London W13 8BZ, United Kingdom		
ELGER	Walter		Schorlemmerallee 12b, 14195 Berlin, Germany		
RODDERSEN	Gudrun		Friedrich-Lagele-Str. 10, 07749 Jena, Germany		
PROSKE	Heinrich-Thomas		Hektorstr. 17, 10711 Berlin, Germany		
TITLE OF THE INVENTION (200 characters max.)					
COMPOSITION					
CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS					
THOMAS J. KOWALSKI, ESQ. FROMMER LAWRENCE & HAUG LLP 745 FIFTH AVENUE, NEW YORK, NEW YORK 10151 /TEL 212-588-0800; FAX 212-588-0500					
STATE	NY	ZIP CODE	10151	COUNTRY	USA
ENCLOSED APPLICATION PARTS (Check all that apply)					
☒ Specification, Claims and Abstract 51 Pages (specification pp. 1-33 ; 25 claims, pp. 34 TO 56, ONE PAGE ABSTRACT, Page 57).			☐ Small Entity Statement Other (specify)		
Drawing(s) 32 SHEETS OF DRAWINGS (Figures 1 TO 11)					
METHOD OF PAYMENT (check one)					
☒ A check or money order is enclosed to cover the Provisional filing fees			PROVISIONAL FILING FEE AMOUNT(S)		\$ 130.00
☒ The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge any additionally required filing fees and credit any overpayment therein to deposit account number: 58-4328					

The invention was made by an agency of the United States Government or under a contract with an agency of the United States Government.

☒ No.

Respectfully submitted,

SIGNATURE

Thomas J. Kowalski

DATE

JULY 17, 2000

TYPED OR PRINTED NAME

THOMAS J. KOWALSKI, ESQ.

REGISTRATION NO.

Reg. No. 32,147

☐ Additional inventors are being named on separately numbered sheets attached hereto.

PROVISIONAL APPLICATION FILING ONLY

Burden Hour Statement: This form is estimated to take 2 hours to complete. Time will vary depending upon the needs of the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you are required to complete this form should be sent to the Office of Assistance Quality and Enhancement Division, Patent and Trademark Office, Washington, DC 20231, and to the Office of Information and Regulatory Affairs, Office of Management and Budget (Project 0651-0037), Washington, DC 20503. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, DC 20231.

EXPRESS MAIL

Mailing Label Number: EL560677849US

Date of Deposit: July 17, 2000

I hereby certify that this paper or fee is being deposited with the United States Postal Service "Express Mail Post Office to Addressee" Service under 37 CFR 1.10 on the date indicated above and is addressed to: Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, DC 20231, BOX PROVISIONAL PATENT APPLICATION

Edward Nay

(Typed or printed name of person mailing paper or fee)

[Signature]

(Signature of person mailing paper or fee)

SJL2925.DOC

207 2/3

1

COMPOSITION

FIELD OF INVENTION

5 The present invention relates to a composition.

In particular the present invention relates to a pharmaceutical composition comprising a compound in an amount to provide a dosage of no greater than 200 µg/day. The compound is a cyclic compound comprising ring system and a sulphamate group. The present invention also relates to the use of the composition in therapy applications.

10

BACKGROUND TO THE INVENTION

Estrogens play a major role in hormonal contraception, in menopausal hormone replacement therapy (HRT), and for treating gynaecological diseases (e.g. mammary carcinoma) and andrologic diseases (e.g. prostatic carcinoma). For HRT and contraception, estrogens are mainly used together with a gestagen, e.g. levonorgestrel, desogestrel, norethisterone, cyproterone acetate, chlormadinone acetate, dienogest.

15

When used for contraception, estrogens are needed for safely suppressing follicle maturation and ovulation, but in addition they replace the endogenous ovarian secretion of estradiol which is suppressed to a major extent. This replacement is important for maintaining an artificial menstrual cycle and other genital functions, which could not be done to any satisfactory extent by just using a gestagen.

20

In addition, endogenous and exogenous estrogens fulfil important central nervous and metabolic functions in the female organism: normal estrogen levels make a decisive contribution to a woman's well-being. Their presence in the system counteracts the development of cardiovascular diseases through various mechanisms: generation of "favourable" lipoprotein patterns in the blood, inhibition of lipid deposits in the walls of blood vessels, reduction in blood pressure by favourably influencing the vascular tone, lowering of the perfusion resistance in essential vascular sectors, attenuation of contractile stimuli at the vascular muscle. The tunicae intimatae, when influenced by estrogens, release factors that counteract the formation of thrombi. Estrogens are also indispensable for preserving the bone structure in women. Their absence may result in destruction of the bone (osteoporosis). These latter "central nervous" and "metabolic" effects of estrogens are a main aspect of HRT. It can be considered that estrogens have

25

30

35

50248730.071700

208
gth

analogous functions in the male organism, and that their withdrawal results in similar disorders as in women. One difference between the two sexes is that hormone production in males ceases less regularly and at a later age than that in women.

- 5 But notwithstanding all positive aspects of estrogen therapy there are unsolved problems, too, which restrict the therapeutic use of estrogens or entail undesired effects.

The known estrogens show pharmacokinetic deficits. Natural estrogens (estradiol, oestrone, oestrone sulphate, esters of estradiol, oestriol) become bioavailable only to a
10 very low degree when taken orally. This degree may vary so much from person to person that general dosage recommendations cannot be given. Fast elimination of the substances from the blood is another problem. Estrogen replacement under HRT often has to be adjusted to the individual.

15 The same is true of synthetic estrogens. The most important synthetically altered estrogenic steroid is ethinyl estradiol (EE). This estrogen is dominant in oral hormonal contraception. Apart from EE, mestranol is used in a few cases; this is a "prodrug" that is metabolised to EE in the organism. When applied orally to humans, EE has a much better bioavailability than the natural estrogens mentioned above, but its oral bioavailability
20 varies to an large extent from individual to individual. Several authors have pointed to this as well as to the fact that concentrations in the blood proved to be highly irregular after oral application of this substance (Goldzieher, J. W. 1989, Goldzieher, J. W. 1990, Humpel, M. 1987, Kuhn, 1993).

25 In addition, the known estrogens show pharmacodynamic deficits. After resorption from the intestinal lumen, orally applied active ingredients enter the organism via the liver. This fact is of specific importance for estrogenic agents as the liver is a target organ for estrogens; oral intake of estrogens results in strong estrogenic effects in the liver. The secretion activity that is controlled by estrogens in the human liver includes synthesis of
30 transfer proteins CBG, SHBG, TBG, angiotensinogen, several factors that are important for the physiology of blood clotting, and lipoproteins. If natural estrogens are introduced to the female organism while avoiding passage through the liver (e.g. by transdermal application), the liver functions mentioned remain virtually unchanged. Therapeutically equivalent doses of natural estrogens (see definition above), when applied orally, result in
35 clear responses of hepatic parameters: increase of SHBG, CBG, angiotensinogen, HDL (high density lipoprotein). These hepatic effects of estrogen are clearly stronger when, instead of natural estrogens, equine estrogen formulations (so-called conjugated

40

estrogens) are used (Campbell, S. et al., 1981). Ethinyl estradiol and DES have an even greater hepatic oestrogenicity.

When referring to antigonadotropic properties, EE is about 4 to 18 times more estrogenic in the liver than orally applied natural estrogens are (Campbell, S. et al., 1981). This is a very unfavourable dissociation of properties.

These deficits are of considerable clinical significance when known natural and synthetic estrogens are to be applied.

A known complication that may occur after applying high doses of estrogen to males suffering from prostatic carcinoma is fatal thromboembolism. The potential of EE to produce side effects in the liver determines, though in a somewhat weakened form, the strategy of oral hormonal contraception. With a view to desired contraceptive effects and maintenance of the menstrual process on the one hand, and the need to take into account the considerable side effect potential on the other, controlling EE levels in the blood may be compared to a tightrope walk. It is quite possible that a large percentage of women cannot apply oral contraceptives because either menstrual bleeding abnormalities or estrogen-related side effects exceed the tolerance threshold.

Evidence suggests that oestrogens are the major mitogens involved in promoting the growth of tumours in endocrine-dependent tissues, such as the breast and endometrium. Although plasma oestrogen concentrations are similar in women with or without breast cancer, breast tumour oestrone and oestradiol levels are significantly higher than in normal breast tissue or blood. *In situ* synthesis of oestrogen is thought to make an important contribution to the high levels of oestrogens in tumours and therefore inhibitors, in particular specific inhibitors, of oestrogen biosynthesis are of potential value for the treatment of endocrine-dependent tumours.

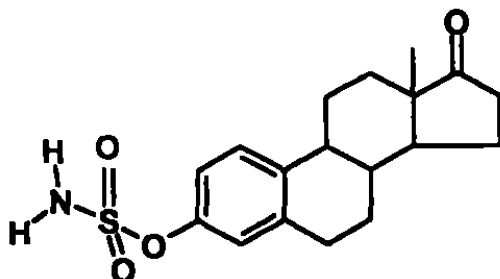
Over the past two decades, there has been considerable interest in the development of inhibitors of the aromatase pathway - which converts the androgen precursor androstenedione to oestrone. However, there is now evidence that the oestrone sulphatase (E1-STs) pathway, i.e. the hydrolysis of oestrone sulphate to oestrone (E1S to E1), as opposed to the aromatase pathway, is the major source of oestrogen in breast tumours. This theory is supported by a modest reduction of plasma oestrogen concentration in postmenopausal women with breast cancer treated by aromatase inhibitors, such as aminoglutethimide and 4-hydroxyandrostenedione, and also by the fact

216
210

that plasma E1S concentration in these aromatase inhibitor-treated patients remains relatively high. The long half-life of E1S in blood (10-12 h) compared with the unconjugated oestrogens (20 min) and high levels of steroid sulphatase activity in liver and, normal and malignant breast tissues, also lend support to this theory.

PCT/GB92/01587 teaches novel steroid sulphatase inhibitors and pharmaceutical compositions containing them for use in the treatment of oestrone dependent tumours, especially breast cancer. These steroid sulphatase inhibitors are sulphamate esters, such as N,N-dimethyl oestrone-3-sulphamate and, preferably, oestrone-3-sulphamate (otherwise known as "EMATE"). Further sulphamate esters are disclosed WO 96/05216 and WO 96/05217. These sulphamate esters include oestradiol-3-sulphamate (referred to herein as J995). See also U.S. Patent No. 6,011,024.

EMATE (oestrone-3-O-sulphamate) – has the following structure:



It is known that EMATE is a potent E1-STS inhibitor as it displays more than 99% inhibition of E1-STS activity in intact MCF-7 cells at 0.1 mM. EMATE also inhibits the E1-STS enzyme in a time- and concentration-dependent manner, indicating that it acts as an active site-directed inactivator. Although EMATE was originally designed for the inhibition of E1-STS, it also inhibits dehydroepiandrosterone sulphatase (DHA-STS), which is an enzyme that is believed to have a pivotal role in regulating the biosynthesis of the oestrogenic steroid androstenediol. Also, there is now evidence to suggest that androstenediol may be of even greater importance as a promoter of breast tumour growth. EMATE is also active in vivo as almost complete inhibition of rat liver E1-STS (99%) and DHA-STS (99%) activities resulted when it is administered either orally or subcutaneously. In addition, EMATE has been shown to have a memory enhancing effect in rats. Studies in mice have suggested an association between DHA-STS activity and the regulation of part of the immune response. It is thought that this may also occur in humans. The bridging O-atom of the sulphamate moiety in EMATE is important for

SC219730-071700

412

211
218

inhibitory activity. Thus, when the 3-O-atom is replaced by other heteroatoms as in oestrone-3-N-sulphamate and oestrone-3-S-sulphamate, these analogues are weaker non-time-dependent inactivators.

5 Although optimal potency for inhibition of E1-STS may have been attained in EMATE, it is possible that oestrone may be released during sulphatase inhibition and that EMATE and its oestradiol congener may possess oestrogenic activity.

10 Ahmed *et al* (Biochem Biophys Res Commun 1999 Jan 27;254(3):811-5) report on a structure-activity relationship study of steroidal and nonsteroidal inhibitors of STS.

It is therefore an aim of the present invention to provide novel compositions suitable for oral contraception, hormone replacement therapy, the inhibition of E1-STS as well as other therapeutic applications.

15 SUMMARY ASPECTS OF THE PRESENT INVENTION

20 The present invention is based on the surprising finding that compositions providing a cyclic compound, which cyclic compound comprises a ring system and a sulphamate group ("a sulphamate compound"), in an amount to provide a dosage of no greater than 200 µg/day may provide oral contraception, hormone replacement therapy, and/or the inhibition of E1-STS. At the dosage provided by the composition of the present invention, the delivered compounds show a more favourable relation between desired and therapeutically undesired effects.

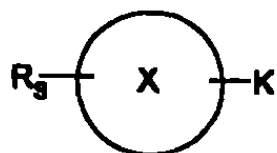
25 The sulphamate compounds comprise at least one ring component. That ring component comprises at least 4 atoms in the ring. Typically, those 4 atoms will be carbon atoms. Thus, typically, that ring component will be a hydrocarbyl group. The cyclic compound also includes a sulphamate group as further substituent(s) on the ring system. The
30 sulphamate group is a substituent on the ring component.

DETAILED ASPECTS OF THE PRESENT INVENTION

35 According to one aspect of the present invention, there is provided a pharmaceutical composition comprising

(i) a compound of Formula (I)

113



Formula I

wherein: X is a hydrocarbyl ring having at least 4 atoms in the ring; K is a hydrocarbyl group; R_s is a sulphamate group;

(ii) optionally admixed with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, diluent, excipient or adjuvant,

wherein the compound is present in an amount to provide a dosage of no greater than 200 µg/day.

In an alternative aspect the present invention provides a pharmaceutical composition comprising a compound, wherein the compound is present in an amount such that the compound described above or a metabolite thereof is provided to the blood plasma of the subject to be treated in amount of no greater than 200 µg/day.

The above maximum dosage and all dosages referred to in the present specification relate to a dosage for a 70 kg subject, unless indicated to the contrary. A person skilled in the art would readily be able to modify the recited dosages for a subject having a mass other than 70kg

The dosage per day is calculated by dividing the dose to be administered to the subject by the anticipated dosage period in days. The anticipated dosage period will typically be the period until the next administration, the period over which the dose is to have effect or the period over which the dose is required to have effect.

According to one aspect of the present invention, there is provided a composition according to the present invention for use in medicine.

According to one aspect of the present invention, there is provided the use of a composition according to the present invention in the manufacture of a medicament for use in oral contraception.

According to one aspect of the present invention, there is provided the use of a composition according to the present invention in the manufacture of a medicament for use in hormone replacement therapy.

213
200

According to one aspect of the present invention, there is provided the use of a composition according to the present invention in the manufacture of a medicament for use in the therapy of a condition or disease associated with STS.

5

According to one aspect of the present invention, there is provided the use of a compound according to the present invention in the manufacture of a medicament for use in the therapy of a condition or disease associated with adverse STS levels.

10

According to one aspect of the present invention, there is provided a method of treating a subject comprising administering to said subject a compound according to the present invention in an amount of no greater than 200 µg/day.

15

For ease of reference, these and further aspects of the present invention are now discussed under appropriate section headings. However, the teachings under each section are not necessarily limited to each particular section.

PREFERABLE ASPECTS

20

Preferably, the compound is present in the composition in an amount to provide a dosage of from 10 to 200 µg/day.

Preferably, the compound is present in the composition in an amount to provide a dosage of from 50 to 200 µg/day.

25

Preferably, the compound is present in the composition in an amount to provide a dosage of from 20 to 50 µg/day.

30

The composition may be formulated such that administration daily, weekly or monthly will provide the desired daily dosage. For example, the present invention may provide a composition comprising the sulphamate compound in amount of no greater 200 µg/dose (for daily dose), no greater than 1.4 mg/dose (weekly dose) or no greater than 5 mg/dose (monthly dose). It will be appreciated that the composition may also be formulated for administration more or less frequently than daily, weekly or monthly.

35

Preferably, X in combination with K mimics a steroidal structure.

415

214 ~~22~~

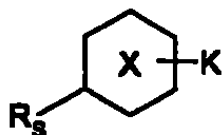
Preferably, K is a cyclic group.

Preferably, X is a six-membered ring.

5 Preferably, the ring X has six carbon atoms in the ring.

Preferably, the compound of Formula I has the formula presented as Formula II wherein each of Rs, X and K have the above-mentioned meanings.

Formula II



10 Preferably the group K and the ring X together will contain, inclusive of all substituents, a maximum of about 50 carbon atoms, more usually no more than about 30 to 40 carbon atoms.

Preferably, X in combination with K is a steroidal ring structure.

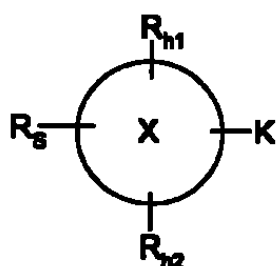
15 Preferably, group K and ring X are a steroid ring structure or a substituted derivative thereof.

Preferably, the Rs group is at position 3 of the ring X.

20 Preferably, Rs is a sulphamate group.

Preferably the compound is of Formula III

Formula III



25 wherein X, K and Rs are as defined above; and wherein Rh1 is an optional halo group; Rh2 is an optional halo group; at least one of Rh1 and Rh2 is present

46

215
222

Preferably, the Rh1 is at position 2 of the ring X.

Preferably, the Rh2 is at position 4 of the ring X.

- 5 For some applications, preferably the compounds have no, or a minimal, oestrogenic effect.

For some applications, preferably the compounds have an oestrogenic effect.

- 10 In one embodiment, the composition of the present invention are useful for the treatment of breast cancer.

SOME ADVANTAGES

- 15 Key advantages of the present invention include the improved pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of the composition of the present invention.

One key advantage of the present invention is that at the delivered dosage the sulphamate compounds have a low hepatic metabolism. It is believed that the
20 compounds of the present invention, such as EMATE and J995, have a high affinity to erythrocytes, up to 99% of the compound in blood is so bound. Liver passage of the compound in this compartment avoids extraction, metabolism and hepatic first pass action. Thus the delivered sulphamate compounds have a high bioavailability.

- 25 A further key advantage of the present invention is that the sulphamate compounds exhibit low variation in concentration in plasma between individuals. The reduction in variation between individuals of estrogen levels in the blood particularly allows for the provision of a monoproduct for both hysterectomised and non- hysterectomised subjects without the need to develop separate products.

30 A further key advantage of the present invention is that the sulphamate compounds exhibit slow elimination from the subject. The composition of the present invention provide steady plasma levels of oestrone (E1) and oestradiol (E2).

- 35 One key advantage of the present invention is that at the delivered dosage the sulphamate compounds have a low hormone action. Therefore the risks of deep vein thrombosis are reduced.

50219730.071700

47

2/6
223

One key advantage of the present invention is that at the delivered dosage protection of bones is provided, yet the dose is below the endometrial proliferation/stimulation threshold. As described above, estrogens are indispensable for preserving the bone structure in women. Their absence may result in destruction of the bone (osteoporosis). However, in typical HRT an oestrogen is administered at a dose such that, as well as the beneficial effects, the endometrium proliferates. The composition of the present invention provides a hormone replacement therapy for bone protection without endometrial stimulation.

Thus in a further aspect the present invention provides use of a compound as defined herein, preferably a composition as defined herein, in the manufacture of a medicament for bone protecting hormone replacement therapy without endometrial stimulation.

Another advantage is that the composition may be formulated without the incorporation of progestins.

Another advantage is that some of the compounds may not be capable of being metabolised to compounds which display or induce hormonal activity.

Some of the compounds of the present invention are also advantageous in that they may be orally active.

Some of the compounds of the present invention may be useful for the treatment of cancer, such as breast cancer, as well as (or in the alternative) non-malignant conditions, such as the prevention of auto-immune diseases, particularly when pharmaceuticals may need to be administered from an early age.

Thus, some of the compounds of the present invention are also believed to have therapeutic uses other than for the treatment of endocrine-dependent cancers, such as the treatment of autoimmune diseases.

HORMONE REPLACEMENT THERAPY

The composition of the present invention may be formulated to provide a hormone replacement therapy. The composition will be formulated to contain the sulphamate compound in amount such that, depending on the prescribed frequency of administration,

50218730.071700

118

217
get

the required daily dosage of sulphamate compound is provided.

In one aspect the composition will be formulated to allow for daily administration. This composition may be formulated in combination with progestins.

5

In all aspects of the present invention, including daily oral administration, hormone replacement therapy is achieved in a manner more convenient than application of a transdermal patch, one typical administration route for HRT.

10 DAILY

When a daily regimen is provided of, for example an administration of 100 µg/day, the following key advantages are particularly observed

15

- reduction in variation of estrogen levels in the blood of the subject between individuals
- steady plasma levels of E1 and E2

When a daily regimen is provided of an administration of 20 to 50 µg/day the following key advantages are particularly observed

20

- no uterine bleeding is observed
- no mammary gland impact

WEEKLY

In one aspect the composition will be formulated to allow for weekly administration. A weekly dose of 0.5 to 2 mg/week, for example 1 mg/week may be provided.

25

A weekly dose will be advantageous for reasons of convenience over both patches and the daily administration of the composition of the present invention.

30 MONTHLY

A monthly HRT composition of the present invention is also envisaged in which a single monthly dosage of 2 to 4mg, or up to 5mg/dose, of compound is provided

35

Furthermore the pharmaceutical compositions containing the compounds according to the invention can be used for treatment of endometrioses and for therapy of oestrogen-

HRT

50218730.071700

218
225

dependant tumours. In this respect one key advantage of the present invention is that the sulphamate compounds of the present invention can act as steroid sulphatase inhibitors.

STEROID SULPHATASE

Steroid sulphatase – which is sometimes referred to as steroid sulfatase or steryl sulphatase or "STS" for short – hydrolyses several sulphated steroids, such as oestrone sulphate, dehydroepiandrosterone sulphate and cholesterol sulphate. STS has been allocated the enzyme number EC 3.1.8.2.

STS has been cloned and expressed. For example see Stein *et al* (J. Biol. Chem. 264:13865-13872 (1989)) and Yen *et al* (Cell 49:443-454(1987)).

STS is an enzyme that has been implicated in a number of disease conditions.

By way of example, workers have found that a total deficiency in STS produces ichthyosis. According to some workers, STS deficiency is fairly prevalent in Japan. The same workers (Sakura *et al*, J Inherit Metab Dis 1997 Nov;20(6):807-10) have also reported that allergic diseases – such as bronchial asthma, allergic rhinitis, or atopic dermatitis - may be associated with a steroid sulphatase deficiency.

In addition to disease states being brought on through a total lack of STS activity, an increased level of STS activity may also bring about disease conditions. By way of example, and as indicated above, there is strong evidence to support a role of STS in breast cancer growth and metastasis.

STS has also been implicated in other disease conditions. By way of example, Le Roy *et al* (Behav Genet 1999 Mar;29(2):131-6) have determined that there may be a genetic correlation between steroid sulphatase concentration and initiation of attack behaviour in mice. The authors conclude that sulphatation of steroids may be the prime mover of a complex network, including genes shown to be implicated in aggression by mutagenesis.

STS INHIBITION

It is believed that some disease conditions associated with STS activity are due to conversion of a nonactive, sulphated oestrone to an active, nonsulphated oestrone. In

222

219
926

disease conditions associated with STS activity, it would be desirable to inhibit STS activity.

5 Here, the term "inhibit" includes reduce and/or eliminate and/or mask and/or prevent the detrimental action of STS.

STS INHIBITOR

10 In accordance with the present invention, the compound of the present invention is capable of acting as an STS inhibitor.

15 Here, the term "inhibitor" as used herein with respect to the compound of the present invention means a compound that can inhibit STS activity – such as reduce and/or eliminate and/or mask and/or prevent the detrimental action of STS. The STS inhibitor may act as an antagonist.

20 The ability of compounds to inhibit oestrogen sulphatase activity can be assessed using either intact MCF-7 breast cancer cells or placental microsomes. In addition, an animal model may be used. Details on suitable Assay Protocols are presented in following sections. It is to be noted that other assays could be used to determine STS activity and thus STS inhibition. For example, reference may also be made to the teachings of WO-A-99/50453.

25 Preferably, for some applications, the compound is further characterised by the feature that if the sulphamate group were to be substituted by a sulphate group to form a sulphate derivative, then the sulphate derivative would be hydrolysable by an enzyme having steroid sulphatase (E.C. 3.1.8.2) activity - i.e. when incubated with steroid sulphatase EC 3.1.8.2 at pH 7.4 and 37°C.

30 In one preferred embodiment, if the sulphamate group of the compound were to be replaced with a sulphate group to form a sulphate compound then that sulphate compound would be hydrolysable by an enzyme having steroid sulphatase (E.C. 3.1.8.2) activity and would yield a Km value of less than 200 mmolar, preferably less than 150 mmolar, preferably less than 100 mmolar, preferably less than 75 mmolar, preferably less
35 than 50 mmolar, when incubated with steroid sulphatase EC 3.1.8.2 at pH 7.4 and 37°C.

50218730.071700

101

220

In a preferred embodiment, the compound of the present invention is not hydrolysable by an enzyme having steroid sulphotase (E.C. 3.1.6.2) activity.

For some applications, preferably the compound of the present invention has at least about a 100 fold selectivity to a desired target (e.g. STS), preferably at least about a 150 fold selectivity to the desired target, preferably at least about a 200 fold selectivity to the desired target, preferably at least about a 250 fold selectivity to the desired target, preferably at least about a 300 fold selectivity to the desired target, preferably at least about a 350 fold selectivity to the desired target.

It is to be noted that the compound of the present invention may have other beneficial properties in addition to or in the alternative to its ability to inhibit STS activity.

GROUP K

Group K need not be a cyclic structure. In this regard, group K may be a linear structure that may have the ability to conform to a ring like structure when in *in vivo*.

In a preferred aspect, group K is cyclic - so as to form the cyclic group K.

Cyclic group K need not necessarily be fused to ring X. In this regard, they may be separated by a suitable spacer group - which may be a hydrocarbyl group.

In a preferred aspect, cyclic group K is fused to ring X.

Group K may be a polycyclic group, which need not be a fused polycycle.

Thus, in a preferred aspect, group K and ring X make up a polycyclic compound. As indicated, here the term "polycyclic" includes fused and non-fused ring structures including combinations thereof.

At least one of the cyclic groups K and X may be a heterocyclic group (a heterocycle) or a non-heterocyclic group.

At least one of the cyclic groups K and X may be a saturated ring structure or an unsaturated ring structure (such as an aryl group).

522

231
20A

Preferably, at least one of the cyclic groups is an aryl ring.

If the cyclic group is polycyclic some or all of the ring components of the compound may be fused together or joined via one or more suitable spacer groups.

5

The polycyclic compound may comprise a number of fused rings. In this aspect the fused rings may comprise any combination of different size rings, such as 3 six-membered rings (6,6,6), a six-membered ring, a seven-membered ring and a six-membered ring (6,7,6), a six-membered ring and two eight-membered rings (6,8,8) etc.

10

In one aspect the present invention relates to compounds wherein the polycyclic compounds are other than (6,6,7) rings. In a further aspect, the present invention relates to compounds wherein the polycyclic compounds only contain rings having other than 7 members.

15

Preferably the polycyclic compound will contain, inclusive of all substituents, no more than 50 about carbon atoms, more usually no more than about 30 to 40 carbon atoms.

20

The polycyclic compound can comprise at least two ring components, or at least three ring components, or at least four ring components.

Preferably, the polycyclic compound comprises four ring components.

Preferred polycyclic compounds have a steroidal ring component, or bio-isosteres thereof.

25

HYDROCARBYL

30

The term "hydrocarbyl group" as used herein means a group comprising at least C and H and may optionally comprise one or more other suitable substituents. Examples of such substituents may include halo, alkoxy, nitro, an alkyl group, a cyclic group etc. In addition to the possibility of the substituents being a cyclic group, a combination of substituents may form a cyclic group. If the hydrocarbyl group comprises more than one C then those carbons need not necessarily be linked to each other. For example, at least two of the carbons may be linked via a suitable element or group. Thus, the hydrocarbyl group may contain hetero atoms. Suitable hetero atoms will be apparent to those skilled in the art and include, for instance, sulphur, nitrogen and oxygen. A non-limiting example of a hydrocarbyl group is an acyl group.

35

425

222 213

A typical hydrocarbonyl group is a hydrocarbon group. Here the term "hydrocarbon" means any one of an alkyl group, an alkenyl group, an alkynyl group, which groups may be linear, branched or cyclic, or an aryl group. The term hydrocarbon also includes those groups but wherein they have been optionally substituted. If the hydrocarbon is a branched structure having substituent(s) thereon, then the substitution may be on either the hydrocarbon backbone or on the branch; alternatively the substitutions may be on the hydrocarbon backbone and on the branch.

SULPHAMATE GROUP

In one embodiment, the ring X has a sulphamate group as a substituent. The term "sulphamate" as used herein includes an ester of sulphamic acid, or an ester of an N-substituted derivative of sulphamic acid, or a salt thereof.

If Rs is a sulphamate group then the compound of the present invention is referred to as a sulphamate compound.

Typically, the sulphamate group has the formula:



wherein preferably R1 and R2 are independently selected from H, alkyl, cycloalkyl, alkenyl and aryl, or combinations thereof, or together represent alkylene, wherein the or each alkyl or cycloalkyl or alkenyl or optionally contain one or more hetero atoms or groups.

When substituted, the N-substituted compounds of this invention may contain one or two N-alkyl, N-alkenyl, N-cycloalkyl or N-aryl substituents, preferably containing or each containing a maximum of 10 carbon atoms. When R1 and/or R2 is alkyl, the preferred values are those where R1 and R2 are each independently selected from lower alkyl groups containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms, that is to say methyl, ethyl, propyl etc. R1 and R2 may both be methyl. When R1 and/or R2 is aryl, typical values are phenyl and tolyl (PhCH₃; o). Where R1 and R2 represent cycloalkyl, typical values are cyclopropyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl etc. When joined together R1 and R2 typically represent an alkylene group providing a chain of 4 to 6 carbon atoms, optionally interrupted by one or

124

223
HCC

more hetero atoms or groups, e.g. to provide a 5 membered heterocycle, e.g. morpholino, pyrrolidino or piperidino.

Within the values alkyl, cycloalkyl, alkenyl and aryl substituted groups are included containing as substituents therein one or more groups which do not interfere with the sulphatase inhibitory activity of the compound in question. Exemplary non-interfering substituents include hydroxy, amino, halo, alkoxy, alkyl and aryl.

In some embodiments, the sulphamate group may form a ring structure by being fused to (or associated with) one or more atoms in or on group X.

In some embodiments, there may be more than one sulphamate group. By way of example, there may be two sulphamates (i.e. bis-sulphamate compounds). If these compounds are based on a steroidal nucleus, preferably the second (or at least one of the additional) sulphamate group is located at position 17 of the steroidal nucleus. These groups need not be the same.

In some preferred embodiments, at least one of R1 and R2 is H.

In some further preferred embodiments, each of R1 and R2 is H.

MIMIC

In one aspect, X and K can be a mimic of a steroidal ring structure

The term "mimic" as used herein means having a similar or different structure but having a similar functional effect. In other words, group K and ring X together may be a bio-isostere of the rings of a steroid, or an active part thereof.

In a preferred aspect, group K and ring X together may be a bio-isostere of the rings of oestrone, or a part thereof.

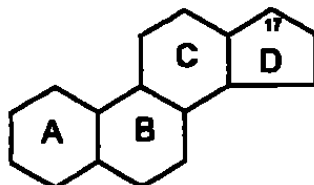
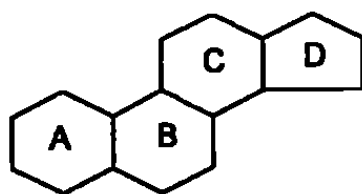
STEROIDAL RING STRUCTURE

In one preferred aspect, X and K make up a steroidal ring structure - that is to say a cyclopentanophenanthrene skeleton, or bio-isosteres thereof.

128

224 238

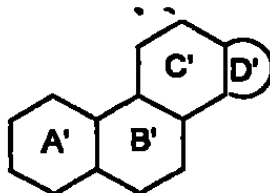
As it is well known in the art, a classical steroidal ring structure has the generic formula of:



In the above formula, the rings have been labelled in the conventional manner.

An example of a bio-isostere is when any one or more of rings A, B, C and D is a heterocyclic ring and/or when any one or more of rings A, B, C and D has been substituted and/or when any one or more of rings A, B, C and D has been modified; but wherein the bio-isostere in the absence of the sulphamate group has steroidal properties.

In this regard, the structure of a preferred polycyclic structure can be presented as:



wherein each ring A', B', C' and D' independently represents a heterocyclic ring or a non-heterocyclic ring, which rings may be independently substituted or unsubstituted, saturated or unsaturated.

By way of example, any one or more of rings A', B', C' and D' may be independently substituted with suitable groups - such as an alkyl group, an aryl group, a hydroxy group, a halo group, a hydrocarbyl group, an oxyhydrocarbyl group etc.

128

225

An example of D' is a five or six membered non-heterocyclic ring having at least one substituent.

In one preferred embodiment, the ring D' is substituted with a ethynyl group.

5

If any one of rings A', B', C' and D' is a heterocyclic ring, then preferably that heterocyclic ring comprises a combination of C atoms and at least one N atom and/or at least one O atom. Other heterocyclic atoms may be present in the ring.

10 Examples of suitable, preferred steroidal nuclei rings A'-D' of the compounds of the present invention include rings A-D of dehydroepiandrosterone and oestrogens including oestrone. Preferred oestrogens include natural oestrogens such as oestrone, oestradiol, oestratriol, epi-estriol, and conjugated oestrogens (equilans derivatives).

15 In one aspect of the present invention, it is preferred that the compound of the present invention is a prodrug of a natural oestrogen, preferably a natural oestrogen selected from oestrone, oestradiol, oestratriol, and epi-estriol.

20 Preferred steroidal nuclei rings A'-D' of the compounds of the present invention include rings A-D of:

oestrones and substituted oestrones, viz:

oestrone

4-OH-oestrone

25 6 α -OH-oestrone

7 α -OH-oestrone

16 α -OH-oestrone

16 β -OH-oestrone

17-deoxyoestrone

30 oestrone

oestradiols and substituted oestradiols, viz:

4-OH-17 β -oestradiol

6 α -OH-17 β -oestradiol

35 7 α -OH-17 β -oestradiol

4-OH-17 α -oestradiol

107

226 228

6 α -OH-17 α -oestradiol7 α -OH-17 α -oestradiol16 α -OH-17 α -oestradiol16 α -OH-17 β -oestradiol5 16 β -OH-17 α -oestradiol16 β -OH-17 β -oestradiol17 α -oestradiol17 β -oestradiol17 α -ethinyl-17 β -oestradiol10 17 β -ethinyl-17 α -oestradiol

17-deoxyoestradiol

oestriols and substituted oestriols, viz:

oestriol

15 4-OH-oestriol

6 α -OH-oestriol7 α -OH-oestriol

17-deoxyoestriol

20 dehydroepiandrosterones and substituted dehydroepiandrosterones, viz:

dehydroepiandrosterones

6 α -OH-dehydroepiandrosterone7 α -OH-dehydroepiandrosterone16 α -OH-dehydroepiandrosterone25 16 β -OH-dehydroepiandrosterone

In general terms the ring system A'B'C'D' may contain a variety of non-interfering substituents. In particular, the ring system A'B'C'D' may contain one or more hydroxy, alkyl especially lower (C₁-C₆) alkyl, e.g. methyl, ethyl, n-propyl, isopropyl, n-butyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, n-pentyl and other pentyl isomers, and n-hexyl and other hexyl isomers, alkoxy especially lower (C₁-C₆) alkoxy, e.g. methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy etc., alkynyl, e.g. ethinyl, or halogen, e.g. fluoro substituents.

NON-STEROID STRUCTURES

35

228

227
932

In an alternative embodiment, the compound of the present invention may not contain or be based on a steroid nucleus. In this regard, the polycyclic compound may contain or be based on a non-steroidal ring system - such as diethylstilboestrol, stilboestrol, coumarins, flavonoids, combrestatin and other ring systems. Other suitable non-steroidal compounds for use in or as the composition of the present invention may be found in US-A-5567831.

OTHER SUBSTITUENTS

The compound of the present invention may have substituents other than Rh1, Rh2 and Rs. By way of example, these other substituents may be one or more of: one or more sulphamate group(s), one or more phosphonate group(s), one or more thiophosphonate group(s), one or more sulphonate group(s), one or more sulphonamide group(s), one or more halo groups, one or more O groups, one or more hydroxy groups, one or more amino groups, one or more sulphur containing group(s), one or more hydrocarbyl group(s) - such as an oxyhydrocarbyl group.

OXYHYDROCARBYL

The term "oxyhydrocarbyl" group as used herein means a group comprising at least C, H and O and may optionally comprise one or more other suitable substituents. Examples of such substituents may include halo-, alkoxy-, nitro-, an alkyl group, a cyclic group etc. In addition to the possibility of the substituents being a cyclic group, a combination of substituents may form a cyclic group. If the oxyhydrocarbyl group comprises more than one C then those carbons need not necessarily be linked to each other. For example, at least two of the carbons may be linked via a suitable element or group. Thus, the oxyhydrocarbyl group may contain hetero atoms. Suitable hetero atoms will be apparent to those skilled in the art and include, for instance, sulphur and nitrogen.

In one embodiment of the present invention, the oxyhydrocarbyl group is a oxyhydrocarbon group.

Here the term "oxyhydrocarbon" means any one of an alkoxy group, an oxyalkenyl group, an oxyalkynyl group, which groups may be linear, branched or cyclic, or an oxyaryl group. The term oxyhydrocarbon also includes those groups but wherein they have been optionally substituted. If the oxyhydrocarbon is a branched structure having substituent(s) thereon, then the substitution may be on either the hydrocarbon backbone

129

228
233

or on the branch; alternatively the substitutions may be on the hydrocarbon backbone and on the branch.

Typically, the oxyhydrocarbyl group is of the formula $C_{1-5}O$ (such as a $C_{1-5}O$).

5

ASSAY FOR DETERMINING STS ACTIVITY USING CANCER CELLS (PROTOCOL 1)

Inhibition of Steroid Sulphatase Activity in MCF-7 cells

10 Steroid sulphatase activity is measured *in vitro* using intact MCF-7 human breast cancer cells. This hormone dependent cell line is widely used to study the control of human breast cancer cell growth. It possesses significant steroid sulphatase activity (MacIndoe et al. Endocrinology, 123, 1281-1287 (1988); Purohit & Read, Int. J. Cancer, 50, 901-905 (1992)) and is available in the U.S.A. from the American Type Culture Collection (ATCC) and in the U.K. (e.g. from The Imperial Cancer Research Fund).

Cells are maintained in Minimal Essential Medium (MEM) (Flow Laboratories, Irvine, Scotland) containing 20 mM HEPES, 5% foetal bovine serum, 2 mM glutamine, non-essential amino acids and 0.075% sodium bicarbonate. Up to 30 replicate 25 cm² tissue culture flasks are seeded with approximately 1×10^5 cells/flask using the above medium. Cells are grown to 80% confluency and the medium is changed every third day.

Intact monolayers of MCF-7 cells in triplicate 25 cm² tissue culture flasks are washed with Earle's Balanced Salt Solution (EBSS from ICN Flow, High Wycombe, U.K.) and incubated for 3-4 hours at 37°C with 5 pmol (7×10^5 dpm) [6,7-³H]oestrone-3-sulphate (specific activity 80 Ci/mmol from New England Nuclear, Boston, Mass., U.S.A.) in serum-free MEM (2.5 ml) together with oestrone-3-sulphamate (11 concentrations: 0; 1fM; 0.01pM; 0.1pM; 1pM; 0.01nM; 0.1nM; 1nM; 0.01mM; 0.1mM; 1mM). After incubation each flask is cooled and the medium (1 ml) is pipetted into separate tubes containing [14C]oestrone (7×10^3 dpm) (specific activity 97 Ci/mmol from Amersham International Radiochemical Centre, Amersham, U.K.). The mixture is shaken thoroughly for 30 seconds with toluene (5 ml). Experiments have shown that >90% [14C] oestrone and <0.1% [3H]oestrone-3-sulphate is removed from the aqueous phase by this treatment. A portion (2 ml) of the organic phase is removed, evaporated and the 3H and 14C content of the residue determined by scintillation spectrometry. The mass of oestrone-3-sulphate hydrolysed was calculated from the 3H counts obtained (corrected for the volumes of the medium and organic phase used, and for recovery of [14C] oestrone added) and the

120

229 239

specific activity of the substrate. Each batch of experiments includes incubations of microsomes prepared from a sulphatase-positive human placenta (positive control) and flasks without cells (to assess apparent non-enzymatic hydrolysis of the substrate). The number of cell nuclei per flask is determined using a Coulter Counter after treating the cell monolayers with Zaponin. One flask in each batch is used to assess cell membrane status and viability using the Trypan Blue exclusion method (Phillips, H.J. (1973) In: Tissue culture and applications, [eds: Kruse, D.F. & Patterson, M.K.]; pp. 406-408; Academic Press, New York).

Results for steroid sulphatase activity are expressed as the mean $\pm$ 1 S.D. of the total product (oestrone + oestradiol) formed during the incubation period (20 hours) calculated for 106 cells and, for values showing statistical significance, as a percentage reduction (inhibition) over incubations containing no oestrone-3-sulphamate. Unpaired Student's t-test was used to test the statistical significance of results.

ASSAY FOR DETERMINING STS ACTIVITY USING PLACENTAL MICROSOMES (PROTOCOL 2)

Inhibition of Steroid Sulphatase Activity in Placental Microsomes

Sulphatase-positive human placenta from normal term pregnancies are thoroughly minced with scissors and washed once with cold phosphate buffer (pH 7.4, 50 mM) then re-suspended in cold phosphate buffer (5 ml/g tissue). Homogenisation is accomplished with an Ultra-Turrax homogeniser, using three 10 second bursts separated by 2 minute cooling periods in ice. Nuclei and cell debris are removed by centrifuging (4°C) at 2000g for 30 minutes and portions (2 ml) of the supernatant are stored at 20°C. The protein concentration of the supernatants is determined by the method of Bradford (Anal. Biochem., 72, 248-254 (1976)).

Incubations (1 ml) are carried out using a protein concentration of 100 mg/ml, substrate concentration of 20 mM [6,7-3H]oestrone-3-sulphate (specific activity 60 Ci/mmol from New England Nuclear, Boston, Mass., U.S.A.) and an incubation time of 20 minutes at 37°C. If necessary eight concentrations of compounds are employed: 0 (i.e. control); 0.05mM; 0.1mM; 0.2mM; 0.4mM; 0.6mM; 0.8mM; 1.0mM. After incubation each sample is cooled and the medium (1 ml) was pipetted into separate tubes containing [14C]oestrone (7 x 10³ dpm) (specific activity 97 Ci/mmol from Amersham International Radiochemical Centre, Amersham, U.K.). The mixture is shaken thoroughly for 30

124

50218730.074700

230
235

seconds with toluene (5 ml). Experiments have shown that >90% [14C]oestrone and <0.1% [3H]oestrone-3-sulphate is removed from the aqueous phase by this treatment. A portion (2 ml) of the organic phase was removed, evaporated and the 3H and 14C content of the residue determined by scintillation spectrometry. The mass of oestrone-3-sulphate hydrolysed is calculated from the 3H counts obtained (corrected for the volumes of the medium and organic phase used, and for recovery of [14C]oestrone added) and the specific activity of the substrate.

ANIMAL ASSAY MODEL FOR DETERMINING STS ACTIVITY (PROTOCOL 3)

Inhibition of oestrone sulphatase activity *in vivo*

The compounds of the present invention may be studied using an animal model, in particular in ovariectomised rats. In this model compounds which are oestrogenic stimulate uterine growth.

The compound (0.1 mg/Kg/day for five days) is administered orally to rats with another group of animals receiving vehicle only (propylene glycol). At the end of the study samples of liver tissue were obtained and oestrone sulphatase activity assayed using 3H oestrone sulphate as the substrate as previously described (see PCT/GB95/02638).

ANIMAL ASSAY MODEL FOR DETERMINING OESTROGENIC ACTIVITY (PROTOCOL 4)

Lack of *in vivo* oestrogenicity

The compounds of the present invention may be studied using an animal model, in particular in ovariectomised rats. In this model, compounds which are oestrogenic stimulate uterine growth.

The compound (0.1 mg/Kg/day for five days) was administered orally to rats with another group of animals receiving vehicle only (propylene glycol). At the end of the study uteri were obtained and weighed with the results being expressed as uterine weight/whole body weight x 100.

Compounds having no significant effect on uterine growth are not oestrogenic.

+32

231 238

BIOTECHNOLOGICAL ASSAYS FOR DETERMINING STS ACTIVITY (PROTOCOL 5)

The ability of compounds to inhibit oestrone sulphotase activity can also be assessed using amino acid sequences or nucleotide sequences encoding STS, or active fragments, derivatives, homologues or variants thereof in, for example, high-through put screens.

Any one or more of appropriate targets - such as an amino acid sequence and/or nucleotide sequence - may be used for identifying an agent capable of modulating STS in any of a variety of drug screening techniques. The target employed in such a test may be free in solution, affixed to a solid support, borne on a cell surface, or located intracellularly. The abolition of target activity or the formation of binding complexes between the target and the agent being tested may be measured.

The assay of the present invention may be a screen, whereby a number of agents are tested. In one aspect, the assay method of the present invention is a high through put screen.

Techniques for drug screening may be based on the method described in Geysen, European Patent Application 84/03584, published on September 13, 1984. In summary, large numbers of different small peptide test compounds are synthesised on a solid substrate, such as plastic pins or some other surface. The peptide test compounds are reacted with a suitable target or fragment thereof and washed. Bound entities are then detected - such as by appropriately adapting methods well known in the art. A purified target can also be coated directly onto plates for use in a drug screening techniques. Alternatively, non-neutralising antibodies can be used to capture the peptide and immobilise it on a solid support.

This invention also contemplates the use of competitive drug screening assays in which neutralising antibodies capable of binding a target specifically compete with a test compound for binding to a target.

Another technique for screening provides for high throughput screening (HTS) of agents having suitable binding affinity to the substances and is based upon the method described in detail in WO 84/03584.

It is expected that the assay methods of the present invention will be suitable for both small and large-scale screening of test compounds as well as in quantitative assays.

233

232 237

In one preferred aspect, the present invention relates to a method of identifying agents that selectively modulate STS, which compounds have the formula (Ia).

5 REPORTERS

A wide variety of reporters may be used in the assay methods (as well as screens) of the present invention with preferred reporters providing conveniently detectable signals (eg. by spectroscopy). By way of example, a reporter gene may encode an enzyme which
10 catalyses a reaction which alters light absorption properties.

Other protocols include enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA), radioimmunoassay (RIA) and fluorescent activated cell sorting (FACS). A two-site, monoclonal-based immunoassay utilising monoclonal antibodies reactive to two non-interfering epitopes may even be used. These and other assays are described, among
15 other places, in Hampton R et al (1990, Serological Methods, A Laboratory Manual, APS Press, St Paul MN) and Maddox DE et al (1983, J Exp Med 158:121-1).

Examples of reporter molecules include but are not limited to (β -galactosidase, invertase, green fluorescent protein, luciferase, chloramphenicol, acetyltransferase, (-glucuronidase, exo-glucanase and glucoamylase. Alternatively, radiolabelled or fluorescent tag-labelled
20 nucleotides can be incorporated into nascent transcripts which are then identified when bound to oligonucleotide probes.

By way of further examples, a number of companies such as Pharmacia Biotech (Piscataway, NJ), Promega (Madison, WI), and US Biochemical Corp (Cleveland, OH) supply commercial kits and protocols for assay procedures. Suitable reporter molecules or labels include those radionuclides, enzymes, fluorescent, chemiluminescent, or chromogenic agents as well as substrates, cofactors, inhibitors, magnetic particles and
25 the like. Patents teaching the use of such labels include US-A-3817837; US-A-3850752; US-A-3838350; US-A-3988345; US-A-4277437; US-A-4275149 and US-A-4366241.

HOST CELLS

35 The term "host cell" - in relation to the present invention includes any cell that could comprise the target for the agent of the present invention.

134

23 838

Thus, a further embodiment of the present invention provides host cells transformed or transfected with a polynucleotide that is or expresses the target of the present invention. Preferably said polynucleotide is carried in a vector for the replication and expression of polynucleotides that are to be the target or are to express the target. The cells will be chosen to be compatible with the said vector and may for example be prokaryotic (for example bacterial), fungal, yeast or plant cells.

The gram negative bacterium *E. coli* is widely used as a host for heterologous gene expression. However, large amounts of heterologous protein tend to accumulate inside the cell. Subsequent purification of the desired protein from the bulk of *E. coli* intracellular proteins can sometimes be difficult.

In contrast to *E. coli*, bacteria from the genus *Bacillus* are very suitable as heterologous hosts because of their capability to secrete proteins into the culture medium. Other bacteria suitable as hosts are those from the genera *Streptomyces* and *Pseudomonas*.

Depending on the nature of the polynucleotide encoding the polypeptide of the present invention, and/or the desirability for further processing of the expressed protein, eukaryotic hosts such as yeasts or other fungi may be preferred. In general, yeast cells are preferred over fungal cells because they are easier to manipulate. However, some proteins are either poorly secreted from the yeast cell, or in some cases are not processed properly (e.g. hyperglycosylation in yeast). In these instances, a different fungal host organism should be selected.

Examples of suitable expression hosts within the scope of the present invention are fungi such as *Aspergillus* species (such as those described in EP-A-0184438 and EP-A-0284603) and *Trichoderma* species; bacteria such as *Bacillus* species (such as those described in EP-A-0134048 and EP-A-0253455), *Streptomyces* species and *Pseudomonas* species; and yeasts such as *Kluyveromyces* species (such as those described in EP-A-0086430 and EP-A-0301670) and *Saccharomyces* species. By way of example, typical expression hosts may be selected from *Aspergillus niger*, *Aspergillus niger* var. *tubigenis*, *Aspergillus niger* var. *awamori*, *Aspergillus aculeatus*, *Aspergillus nidulans*, *Aspergillus oryzae*, *Trichoderma reesei*, *Bacillus subtilis*, *Bacillus licheniformis*, *Bacillus amyloliquefaciens*, *Kluyveromyces lactis* and *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*.

The use of suitable host cells - such as yeast, fungal and plant host cells - may provide for post-translational modifications (e.g. myristoylation, glycosylation, truncation,

00218730.071700

425

234 135

lapidation and tyrosine, serine or threonine phosphorylation) as may be needed to confer optimal biological activity on recombinant expression products of the present invention.

ORGANISM

5

The term "organism" in relation to the present invention includes any organism that could comprise the target according to the present invention and/or products obtained therefrom. Examples of organisms may include a fungus, yeast or a plant.

10

The term "transgenic organism" in relation to the present invention includes any organism that comprises the target according to the present invention and/or products obtained.

TRANSFORMATION OF HOST CELLS/HOST ORGANISMS

15

As indicated earlier, the host organism can be a prokaryotic or a eukaryotic organism. Examples of suitable prokaryotic hosts include *E. coli* and *Bacillus subtilis*. Teachings on the transformation of prokaryotic hosts is well documented in the art, for example see Sambrook *et al* (Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual, 2nd edition, 1989, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press) and Ausubel *et al.*, Current Protocols In Molecular Biology (1995), John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

20

If a prokaryotic host is used then the nucleotide sequence may need to be suitably modified before transformation - such as by removal of introns.

25

In another embodiment the transgenic organism can be a yeast. In this regard, yeast have also been widely used as a vehicle for heterologous gene expression. The species *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* has a long history of industrial use, including its use for heterologous gene expression. Expression of heterologous genes in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* has been reviewed by Goodey *et al* (1987, Yeast Biotechnology, D R Berry *et al*, eds, pp 401-429, Allen and Unwin, London) and by King *et al* (1989, Molecular and Cell Biology of Yeasts, E F Walton and G T Yarronton, eds, pp 107-133, Blackie, Glasgow).

30

35

For several reasons *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* is well suited for heterologous gene expression. First, it is non-pathogenic to humans and it is incapable of producing certain endotoxins. Second, it has a long history of safe use following centuries of commercial exploitation for various purposes. This has led to wide public acceptability. Third, the

135

5018730-071700

235 280

extensive commercial use and research devoted to the organism has resulted in a wealth of knowledge about the genetics and physiology as well as large-scale fermentation characteristics of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*.

5 A review of the principles of heterologous gene expression in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* and secretion of gene products is given by E Hinchcliffe E Kenny (1993, "Yeast as a vehicle for the expression of heterologous genes", Yeasts, Vol 5, Anthony H Rose and J Stuart Harrison, eds, 2nd edition, Academic Press Ltd.).

10 Several types of yeast vectors are available, including integrative vectors, which require recombination with the host genome for their maintenance, and autonomously replicating plasmid vectors.

15 In order to prepare the transgenic *Saccharomyces*, expression constructs are prepared by inserting the nucleotide sequence into a construct designed for expression in yeast. Several types of constructs used for heterologous expression have been developed. The constructs contain a promoter active in yeast fused to the nucleotide sequence, usually a promoter of yeast origin, such as the GAL1 promoter, is used. Usually a signal sequence of yeast origin, such as the sequence encoding the SUC2 signal peptide, is used. A
20 terminator active in yeast ends the expression system.

For the transformation of yeast several transformation protocols have been developed. For example, a transgenic *Saccharomyces* according to the present invention can be prepared by following the teachings of Hinnen et al (1978, Proceedings of the National
25 Academy of Sciences of the USA 75, 1929); Beggs, J D (1978, Nature, London, 275, 104); and Ito, H et al (1983, J Bacteriology 153, 163-168).

The transformed yeast cells are selected using various selective markers. Among the markers used for transformation are a number of auxotrophic markers such as LEU2,
30 HIS4 and TRP1, and dominant antibiotic resistance markers such as aminoglycoside antibiotic markers, eg G418.

Another host organism is a plant. The basic principle in the construction of genetically modified plants is to insert genetic information in the plant genome so as to obtain a
35 stable maintenance of the inserted genetic material. Several techniques exist for inserting the genetic information, the two main principles being direct introduction of the genetic information and introduction of the genetic information by use of a vector system.

137

236 244

A review of the general techniques may be found in articles by Potrykus (Annu Rev Plant Physiol Plant Mol Biol [1991] 42:205-225) and Christou (Agro-Food-Industry Hi-Tech March/April 1994 17-27). Further teachings on plant transformation may be found in EP-A-0449375.

5

Thus, the present invention also provides a method of transforming a host cell with a nucleotide sequence that is to be the target or is to express the target. Host cells transformed with the nucleotide sequence may be cultured under conditions suitable for the expression of the encoded protein. The protein produced by a recombinant cell may be displayed on the surface of the cell. If desired, and as will be understood by those of skill in the art, expression vectors containing coding sequences can be designed with signal sequences which direct secretion of the coding sequences through a particular prokaryotic or eukaryotic cell membrane. Other recombinant constructions may join the coding sequence to nucleotide sequence encoding a polypeptide domain which will facilitate purification of soluble proteins (Kroll DJ et al (1993) DNA Cell Biol 12:441-53).

10

15

VARIANTS/HOMOLOGUES/DERIVATIVES

20

In addition to the specific amino acid sequences and nucleotide sequences mentioned herein, the present invention also encompasses the use of variants, homologues and derivatives thereof. Here, the term "homology" can be equated with "identity".

25

In the present context, an homologous sequence is taken to include an amino acid sequence which may be at least 75, 85 or 90% identical, preferably at least 95 or 98% identical. Although homology can also be considered in terms of similarity (i.e. amino acid residues having similar chemical properties/functions), in the context of the present invention it is preferred to express homology in terms of sequence identity.

30

Homology comparisons can be conducted by eye, or more usually, with the aid of readily available sequence comparison programs. These commercially available computer programs can calculate % homology between two or more sequences.

35

% homology may be calculated over contiguous sequences, i.e. one sequence is aligned with the other sequence and each amino acid in one sequence is directly compared with the corresponding amino acid in the other sequence, one residue at a time. This is called an "ungapped" alignment. Typically, such ungapped alignments are performed only over a relatively short number of residues.

X38

237

Although this is a very simple and consistent method, it fails to take into consideration that, for example, in an otherwise identical pair of sequences, one insertion or deletion will cause the following amino acid residues to be put out of alignment, thus potentially resulting in a large reduction in % homology when a global alignment is performed. Consequently, most sequence comparison methods are designed to produce optimal alignments that take into consideration possible insertions and deletions without penalising unduly the overall homology score. This is achieved by inserting "gaps" in the sequence alignment to try to maximise local homology.

However, these more complex methods assign "gap penalties" to each gap that occurs in the alignment so that, for the same number of identical amino acids, a sequence alignment with as few gaps as possible - reflecting higher relatedness between the two compared sequences - will achieve a higher score than one with many gaps. "Affine gap costs" are typically used that charge a relatively high cost for the existence of a gap and a smaller penalty for each subsequent residue in the gap. This is the most commonly used gap scoring system. High gap penalties will of course produce optimised alignments with fewer gaps. Most alignment programs allow the gap penalties to be modified. However, it is preferred to use the default values when using such software for sequence comparisons. For example when using the GCG Wisconsin Bestfit package (see below) the default gap penalty for amino acid sequences is -12 for a gap and -4 for each extension.

Calculation of maximum % homology therefore firstly requires the production of an optimal alignment, taking into consideration gap penalties. A suitable computer program for carrying out such an alignment is the GCG Wisconsin Bestfit package (University of Wisconsin, U.S.A.; Devereux et al., 1984, Nucleic Acids Research 12:387). Examples of other software that can perform sequence comparisons include, but are not limited to, the BLAST package (see Ausubel et al., 1999 *ibid* - Chapter 18), FASTA (Atschul et al., 1990, J. Mol. Biol., 403-410) and the GENWORKS suite of comparison tools. Both BLAST and FASTA are available for offline and online searching (see Ausubel et al., 1999 *ibid*, pages 7-58 to 7-60). However it is preferred to use the GCG Bestfit program.

A further useful reference is that found in FEMS Microbiol Lett 1999 May 15;174(2):247-50 (and a published erratum appears in FEMS Microbiol Lett 1999 Aug 1;177(1):187-8).

Although the final % homology can be measured in terms of identity, the alignment

139

238 242

process itself is typically not based on an all-or-nothing pair comparison. Instead, a scaled similarity score matrix is generally used that assigns scores to each pairwise comparison based on chemical similarity or evolutionary distance. An example of such a matrix commonly used is the BLOSUM62 matrix - the default matrix for the BLAST suite of programs. GCG Wisconsin programs generally use either the public default values or a custom symbol comparison table if supplied (see user manual for further details). It is preferred to use the public default values for the GCG package, or in the case of other software, the default matrix, such as BLOSUM62.

Once the software has produced an optimal alignment, it is possible to calculate % homology, preferably % sequence identity. The software typically does this as part of the sequence comparison and generates a numerical result.

The sequences may also have deletions, insertions or substitutions of amino acid residues which produce a silent change and result in a functionally equivalent substance. Deliberate amino acid substitutions may be made on the basis of similarity in polarity, charge, solubility, hydrophobicity, hydrophilicity, and/or the amphipathic nature of the residues as long as the secondary binding activity of the substance is retained. For example, negatively charged amino acids include aspartic acid and glutamic acid; positively charged amino acids include lysine and arginine; and amino acids with uncharged polar head groups having similar hydrophilicity values include leucine, isoleucine, valine, glycine, alanine, asparagine, glutamine, serine, threonine, phenylalanine, and tyrosine.

Conservative substitutions may be made, for example according to the Table below. Amino acids in the same block in the second column and preferably in the same line in the third column may be substituted for each other:

ALIPHATIC	Non-polar	GAP
		ILV
	Polar - uncharged	CSTM
		NQ
	Polar - charged	DE
		KR
AROMATIC		HFWY

490

EXPRESSION VECTORS

The nucleotide sequence for use as the target or for expressing the target can be incorporated into a recombinant replicable vector. The vector may be used to replicate and express the nucleotide sequence in and/or from a compatible host cell. Expression may be controlled using control sequences which include promoters/enhancers and other expression regulation signals. Prokaryotic promoters and promoters functional in eukaryotic cells may be used. Tissue specific or stimuli specific promoters may be used. Chimeric promoters may also be used comprising sequence elements from two or more different promoters described above.

The protein produced by a host recombinant cell by expression of the nucleotide sequence may be secreted or may be contained intracellularly depending on the sequence and/or the vector used. The coding sequences can be designed with signal sequences which direct secretion of the substance coding sequences through a particular prokaryotic or eukaryotic cell membrane.

FUSION PROTEINS

The target amino acid sequence may be produced as a fusion protein, for example to aid in extraction and purification. Examples of fusion protein partners include glutathione-S-transferase (GST), 6xHis, GAL4 (DNA binding and/or transcriptional activation domains) and (-galactosidase. It may also be convenient to include a proteolytic cleavage site between the fusion protein partner and the protein sequence of interest to allow removal of fusion protein sequences. Preferably the fusion protein will not hinder the activity of the target.

The fusion protein may comprise an antigen or an antigenic determinant fused to the substance of the present invention. In this embodiment, the fusion protein may be a non-naturally occurring fusion protein comprising a substance which may act as an adjuvant in the sense of providing a generalised stimulation of the immune system. The antigen or antigenic determinant may be attached to either the amino or carboxy terminus of the substance.

In another embodiment of the invention, the amino acid sequence may be ligated to a heterologous sequence to encode a fusion protein. For example, for screening of peptide

111

240 243

libraries for agents capable of affecting the substance activity, it may be useful to encode a chimeric substance expressing a heterologous epitope that is recognized by a commercially available antibody.

5 THERAPY

The compounds of the present invention may be used as therapeutic agents - i.e. in therapy applications.

10 The term "therapy" includes curative effects, alleviation effects, and prophylactic effects.

The therapy may be on humans or animals, preferably females, more preferably female humans.

15 PHARMACEUTICAL COMPOSITIONS

The present invention provides a pharmaceutical composition, which comprises a compound according to the present invention and optionally a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, diluent or excipient (including combinations thereof).

20 The pharmaceutical compositions may be for human or animal usage in human and veterinary medicine and will typically comprise any one or more of a pharmaceutically acceptable diluent, carrier, or excipient. Acceptable carriers or diluents for therapeutic use are well known in the pharmaceutical art, and are described, for example, in
25 Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences, Mack Publishing Co. (A. R. Gennaro edit. 1985). The choice of pharmaceutical carrier, excipient or diluent can be selected with regard to the intended route of administration and standard pharmaceutical practice. The pharmaceutical compositions may comprise as - or in addition to - the carrier, excipient or diluent any suitable binder(s), lubricant(s), suspending agent(s), coating agent(s),
30 solubilising agent(s).

Preservatives, stabilisers, dyes and even flavouring agents may be provided in the pharmaceutical composition. Examples of preservatives include sodium benzoate, sorbic acid and esters of p-hydroxybenzoic acid. Antioxidants and suspending agents may be
35 also used.

142

241
2000

There may be different composition/formulation requirements dependent on the different delivery systems. By way of example, the pharmaceutical composition of the present invention may be formulated to be delivered using a mini-pump or by a mucosal route, for example, as a nasal spray or aerosol for inhalation or ingestible solution, or parenterally in which the composition is formulated by an injectable form, for delivery, by, for example, an intravenous, intramuscular or subcutaneous route. Alternatively, the formulation may be designed to be delivered by both routes.

Where the agent is to be delivered mucosally through the gastrointestinal mucosa, it should be able to remain stable during transit through the gastrointestinal tract; for example, it should be resistant to proteolytic degradation, stable at acid pH and resistant to the detergent effects of bile.

Where appropriate, the pharmaceutical compositions can be administered by inhalation, in the form of a suppository or pessary, as an interuterine system, topically in the form of a lotion, solution, cream, ointment or dusting powder, by use of a skin patch, orally in the form of tablets containing excipients such as starch or lactose, or in capsules or ovules either alone or in admixture with excipients, or in the form of elixirs, solutions or suspensions containing flavouring or colouring agents, or they can be injected parenterally, for example intravenously, intramuscularly or subcutaneously. For parenteral administration, the compositions may be best used in the form of a sterile aqueous solution which may contain other substances, for example enough salts or monosaccharides to make the solution isotonic with blood. For buccal or sublingual administration the compositions may be administered in the form of tablets or lozenges which can be formulated in a conventional manner.

COMBINATION PHARMACEUTICAL

The compound of the present invention may be used in combination with one or more other active agents, such as one or more other pharmaceutically active agents.

By way of example, the compounds of the present invention may be used in combination with other STS inhibitors and/or other inhibitors such as an aromatase inhibitor (such as for example, 4hydroxyandrostenedione (4-OHA)) and/or steroids – such as the naturally occurring sterneurosteroids dehydroepiandrosterone sulphate (DHEAS) and pregnenolone sulphate (PS) and/or other structurally similar organic compounds.

212 215

The compounds according to the invention may be used alone or in combination with a progestin. Preferably the compounds according to the invention are used in the absence of a progestin. Thus, in a preferred aspect the composition of the present invention is substantially free of progestins.

5

In addition, or in the alternative, the compound of the present invention may be used in combination with a biological response modifier.

The term biological response modifier ("BRM") includes cytokines, immune modulators, growth factors, haematopoiesis regulating factors, colony stimulating factors, chemotactic, haemolytic and thrombolytic factors, cell surface receptors, ligands, leukocyte adhesion molecules, monoclonal antibodies, preventative and therapeutic vaccines, hormones, extracellular matrix components, fibronectin, etc. For some applications, preferably, the biological response modifier is a cytokine. Examples of cytokines include: Interleukins (IL) - such as IL-1, IL-2, IL-3, IL-4, IL-5, IL-6, IL-7, IL-8, IL-9, IL-10, IL-11, IL-12, IL-19; Tumour Necrosis Factor (TNF) - such as TNF- α ; Interferon alpha, beta and gamma; TGF- β . For some applications, preferably the cytokine is tumour necrosis factor (TNF). For some applications, the TNF may be any type of TNF - such as TNF- α , TNF- β , including derivatives or mixtures thereof. More preferably the cytokine is TNF- α . Teachings on TNF may be found in the art - such as WO-A-98/08870 and WO-A-98/13348.

ADMINISTRATION

Typically, a physician will determine the actual dosage which will be most suitable for an individual subject and it will vary with the age, weight and response of the particular patient. The dosages below are exemplary of the average case. There can, of course, be individual instances where higher or lower dosage ranges are merited.

The compositions of the present invention may be administered by direct injection. The composition may be formulated for parenteral, mucosal, intramuscular, intravenous, subcutaneous, intraocular or transdermal administration.

The specific dose level and frequency of dosage for any particular patient may be varied and will depend upon a variety of factors including the activity of the specific compound employed, the metabolic stability and length of action of that compound, the age, body

50310730-071700

243

243
246

weight, general health, sex, diet, mode and time of administration, rate of excretion, drug combination, the severity of the particular condition, and the host undergoing therapy.

Aside from the typical modes of delivery -- indicated above -- the term "administered" also

5 Includes delivery by techniques such as lipid mediated transfection, liposomes, immunoliposomes, lipofectin, cationic facial amphiphiles (CFAs) and combinations thereof. The routes for such delivery mechanisms include but are not limited to mucosal, nasal, oral, parenteral, gastrointestinal, topical, or sublingual routes.

10 The term "administered" includes but is not limited to delivery by a mucosal route, for example, as a nasal spray or aerosol for inhalation or as an ingestible solution; a parenteral route where delivery is by an injectable form, such as, for example, an intravenous, intramuscular or subcutaneous route.

15 Thus, for pharmaceutical administration, the STS inhibitors of the present invention can be formulated in any suitable manner utilizing conventional pharmaceutical formulating techniques and pharmaceutical carriers, adjuvants, excipients, diluents etc. and usually for parenteral administration. Dosages may be given in single dose regimes, split dose regimes and/or in multiple dose regimes lasting over several days. For oral
20 administration they may be formulated in tablets, capsules, solution or suspension. Alternatively the compounds will be formulated for parenteral administration in a suitable parenterally administrable carrier and providing single daily dosage rates. Effective daily doses will, however, vary depending on inherent activity of the active ingredient and on the bodyweight of the patient, such variations being within the skill and judgement of the
25 physician.

CELL CYCLING

30 The compounds of the present invention may be useful in the method of treatment of a cell cycling disorder.

As discussed in "Molecular Cell Biology" 3rd Ed. Lodish et al. pages 177-181 different eukaryotic cells can grow and divide at quite different rates. Yeast cells, for example, can divide every 120 min., and the first divisions of fertilised eggs in the embryonic cells of
35 sea urchins and insects take only 1530 min. because one large pre-existing cell is subdivided. However, most growing plant and animal cells take 10-20 hours to double in number, and some duplicate at a much slower rate. Many cells in adults, such as nerve

00010720.071700

144

244
287

cells and striated muscle cells, do not divide at all; others, like the fibroblasts that assist in healing wounds, grow on demand but are otherwise quiescent.

Still, every eukaryotic cell that divides must be ready to donate equal genetic material to two daughter cells. DNA synthesis in eukaryotes does not occur throughout the cell division cycle but is restricted to a part of it before cell division.

The relationship between eukaryotic DNA synthesis and cell division has been thoroughly analysed in cultures of mammalian cells that were all capable of growth and division. In contrast to bacteria, it was found, eukaryotic cells spend only a part of their time in DNA synthesis, and it is completed hours before cell division (mitosis). Thus a gap of time occurs after DNA synthesis and before cell division; another gap was found to occur after division and before the next round of DNA synthesis. This analysis led to the conclusion that the eukaryotic cell cycle consists of an M (mitotic) phase, a G_1 phase (the first gap), the S (DNA synthesis) phase, a G_2 phase (the second gap), and back to M. The phases between mitoses (G_1 , S, and G_2) are known collectively as the interphase.

Many nondividing cells in tissues (for example, all quiescent fibroblasts) suspend the cycle after mitosis and just prior to DNA synthesis; such "resting" cells are said to have exited from the cell cycle and to be in the G_0 state.

It is possible to identify cells when they are in one of the three interphase stages of the cell cycle, by using a fluorescence-activated cell sorter (FACS) to measure their relative DNA content: a cell that is in G_1 (before DNA synthesis) has a defined amount x of DNA; during S (DNA replication), it has between x and $2x$; and when in G_2 (or M), it has $2x$ of DNA.

The stages of mitosis and cytokinesis in an animal cell are as follows

(a) Interphase. The G_2 stage of interphase immediately precedes the beginning of mitosis. Chromosomal DNA has been replicated and bound to protein during the S phase, but chromosomes are not yet seen as distinct structures. The nucleolus is the only nuclear substructure that is visible under light microscope. In a diploid cell before DNA replication there are two morphologic chromosomes of each type, and the cell is said to be $2n$. In G_2 , after DNA replication, the cell is $4n$. There are four copies of each chromosomal DNA. Since the sister chromosomes have not yet separated from each other, they are called sister chromatids.

x45

00218720.071700

245

b) Early prophase. Centrioles, each with a newly formed daughter centriole, begin moving toward opposite poles of the cell; the chromosomes can be seen as long threads. The nuclear membrane begins to disaggregate into small vesicles.

5

(c) Middle and late prophase. Chromosome condensation is completed; each visible chromosome structure is composed of two chromatids held together at their centromeres. Each chromatid contains one of the two newly replicated daughter DNA molecules. The microtubular spindle begins to radiate from the regions just adjacent to the centrioles, which are moving closer to their poles. Some spindle fibres reach from pole to pole; most go to chromatids and attach at kinetochores.

10

(d) Metaphase. The chromosomes move toward the equator of the cell, where they become aligned in the equatorial plane. The sister chromatids have not yet separated.

15

(e) Anaphase. The two sister chromatids separate into independent chromosomes. Each contains a centromere that is linked by a spindle fibre to one pole, to which it moves. Thus one copy of each chromosome is donated to each daughter cell. Simultaneously, the cell elongates, as do the pole-to-pole spindles. Cytokinesis begins as the cleavage furrow starts to form.

20

(f) Telophase. New membranes form around the daughter nuclei; the chromosomes uncoil and become less distinct, the nucleolus becomes visible again, and the nuclear membrane forms around each daughter nucleus. Cytokinesis is nearly complete, and the spindle disappears as the microtubules and other fibres depolymerise. Throughout mitosis the "daughter" centriole at each pole grows until it is full-length. At telophase the duplication of each of the original centrioles is completed, and new daughter centrioles will be generated during the next interphase.

25

(g) Interphase. Upon the completion of cytokinesis, the cell enters the G₁ phase of the cell cycle and proceeds again around the cycle.

30

It will be appreciated that cell cycling is an extremely important cell process. Deviations from normal cell cycling can result in a number of medical disorders. Increased and/or unrestricted cell cycling may result in cancer. Reduced cell cycling may result in degenerative conditions. Use of the compound of the present invention may provide a means to treat such disorders and conditions.

35

SECRET - 071700

146

246 247

Thus, the compound of the present invention may be suitable for use in the treatment of cell cycling disorders such as cancers, including hormone dependent and hormone independent cancers.

5

In addition, the compound of the present invention may be suitable for the treatment of cancers such as breast cancer, ovarian cancer, endometrial cancer, sarcomas, melanomas, prostate cancer, pancreatic cancer etc. and other solid tumours.

10 For some applications, cell cycling is inhibited and/or prevented and/or arrested, preferably wherein cell cycling is prevented and/or arrested. In one aspect cell cycling may be inhibited and/or prevented and/or arrested in the G₂/M phase. In one aspect cell cycling may be irreversibly prevented and/or inhibited and/or arrested, preferably wherein cell cycling is irreversibly prevented and/or arrested.

15

By the term "Irreversibly prevented and/or inhibited and/or arrested" it is meant after application of a compound of the present invention, on removal of the compound the effects of the compound, namely prevention and/or inhibition and/or arrest of cell cycling, are still observable. More particularly by the term "Irreversibly prevented and/or inhibited and/or arrested" it is meant that when assayed in accordance with the cell cycling assay protocol presented herein, cells treated with a compound of interest show less growth after Stage 2 of the protocol I than control cells. Details on this protocol are presented below.

20

25

Thus, the present invention provides compounds which: cause inhibition of growth of oestrogen receptor positive (ER+) and ER negative (ER-) breast cancer cells *in vitro* by preventing and/or inhibiting and/or arresting cell cycling; and/or cause regression of nitroso-methyl urea (NMU)-induced mammary tumours in intact animals (i.e. not ovariectomised), and/or prevent and/or inhibit and/or arrest cell cycling in cancer cells; and/or act *in vivo* by preventing and/or inhibiting and/or arresting cell cycling and/or act as a cell cycling agonist.

30

CELL CYCLING ASSAY (PROTOCOL 6)

Procedure

35

Stage 1

147

50218730.071700

RECEIVED

- 5

10

Stage 2

15

20

As indicated, the compounds of the present invention may be useful in the treatment of a cell cycling disorder. A particular cell cycling disorder is cancer.

25

30

35

248

hydroxy and 16alpha-hydroxy) and conjugates (e.g. oestrone sulphate, E1S) are important in determining some of the complex actions that oestrogens have in the body.

Workers have investigated the formation of 2- and 16-hydroxylated oestrogens in relation to conditions that alter the risk of breast cancer. There is now evidence that factors which increase 2-hydroxylase activity are associated with a reduced cancer risk, while those increasing 16alpha-hydroxylation may enhance the risk of breast cancer. Further interest in the biological role of estrogen metabolites has been stimulated by the growing body of evidence that 2-methoxyoestradiol is an endogenous metabolite with anti-mitotic properties. 2-methoxyoestrone-3-O-sulphamate (2-MeOE2) is formed from 2-hydroxy estradiol (2-OHE2) by catechol estrogen methyl transferase, an enzyme that is widely distributed throughout the body.

Workers have shown that *in vivo* 2-MeOE2 inhibits the growth of tumours arising from the subcutaneous injection of Meth A sarcoma, B16 melanoma or MDA-MB-435 estrogen receptor negative (ER-) breast cancer cells. It also inhibits endothelial cell proliferation and migration, and *in vitro* angiogenesis. It was suggested that the ability of 2-MeOE2 to inhibit tumour growth *in vivo* may be due to its ability to inhibit tumour-induced angiogenesis rather than direct inhibition of the proliferation of tumour cells.

The mechanism by which 2-MeOE2 exerts its potent anti-mitogenic and anti-angiogenic effects is still being elucidated. There is evidence that at high concentrations it can inhibit microtubule polymerisation and act as a weak inhibitor of colchicine binding to tubulin. Recently, however, at concentrations that block mitosis, tubulin filaments in cells were not found to be depolymerised but to have an identical morphology to that seen after taxol treatment. It is possible, therefore, that like taxol, a drug that is used for breast and ovarian breast cancer therapy, 2-MeOE2 acts by stabilising microtubule dynamics.

While the identification of 2-MeOE2 as a new therapy for cancer represents an important advance, the bioavailability of orally administered oestrogens is poor. Furthermore, they can undergo extensive metabolism during their first pass through the liver. As part of a research programme to develop a steroid sulphotase inhibitor for breast cancer therapy, oestrone-3-O-sulphamate (EMATE) was identified as a potent active site-directed inhibitor. Unexpectedly, EMATE proved to possess potent oestrogenic properties with its oral uterotrophic activity in rats being a 100-times higher than that of estradiol. Its enhanced oestrogenicity is thought to result from its absorption by red blood cells (rbcs) which protects it from inactivation during its passage through the liver and which act as a

749

249 250

reservoir for its slow release for a prolonged period of time. A number of A-ring modified analogues were synthesised and tested, including 2-methoxyoestrone-3-O-sulphamate. While this compound was equipotent with EMATE as a steroid sulphatase inhibitor, it was devoid of oestrogenicity.

5

We believe that the compound of the present invention provides a means for the treatment of cancers and, especially, breast cancer.

10 In addition or in the alternative the compound of the present invention may be useful in the blocking the growth of cancers including leukaemias and solid tumours such as breast, endometrium, prostate, ovary and pancreatic tumours.

THERAPY CONCERNING OESTROGEN

15 We believe that some of the compounds of the present invention may be useful in the control of oestrogen levels in the body – in particular in females. Thus, some of the compounds may be useful as providing a means of fertility control – such as an oral contraceptive tablet, pill, solution or lozenge. Alternatively, the compound could be in the form of an implant or as a patch.

20

Thus, the compounds of the present invention may be useful in treating hormonal conditions associated with oestrogen, in particular treating hormonal conditions associated with oestrogen deficiency.

25 In addition or in the alternative the compound of the present invention may be useful in treating hormonal conditions in addition to those associated with oestrogen. Hence, the compound of the present invention may also be capable of affecting hormonal activity and may also be capable of affecting an immune response.

30 NEURODEGENERATIVE DISEASES

We believe that some of the compounds of the present invention may be useful in the treatment of neurodegenerative diseases, and similar conditions.

35 By way of example, it is believed that STS inhibitors may be useful in the enhancing the memory function of patients suffering from illnesses such as amnesia, head injuries, Alzheimer's disease, epileptic dementia, presenile dementia, post traumatic dementia, senile

SC219730.071700

150

230
151

dementia, vascular dementia and post-stroke dementia or individuals otherwise seeking memory enhancement.

TH1

5

We believe that some of the compounds of the present invention may be useful in TH1 implications.

10

By way of example, it is believed that the presence of STS inhibitors within the macrophage or other antigen presenting cells may lead to a decreased ability of sensitised T cells to mount a TH1 (high IL-2, IFN γ low IL-4) response. The normal regulatory influence of other steroids such as glucocorticoids would therefore predominate.

15

INFLAMMATORY CONDITIONS

20

We believe that some of the compounds of the present invention may be useful in treating inflammatory conditions – such as conditions associated with any one or more of: autoimmunity, including for example, rheumatoid arthritis, type I and II diabetes, systemic lupus erythematosus, multiple sclerosis, myasthenia gravis, thyroiditis, vasculitis, ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease, skin disorders e.g. psoriasis and contact dermatitis; graft versus host disease; eczema; asthma and organ rejection following transplantation.

25

By way of example, it is believed that STS inhibitors may prevent the normal physiological effect of DHEA or related steroids on immune and/or inflammatory responses.

The compounds of the present invention may be useful in the manufacture of a medicament for revealing an endogenous glucocorticoid-like effect.

30

OTHER THERAPIES

It is also to be understood that the compound/composition of the present invention may have other important medical implications.

35

For example, the compound or composition of the present invention may be useful in the treatment of the disorders listed in WO-A-99/52890 – viz.

00218730.074700

151

251 252

In addition, or in the alternative, the compound or composition of the present invention may be useful in the treatment of the disorders listed in WO-A-98/05635. For ease of reference, part of that list is now provided: cancer, inflammation or inflammatory disease, dermatological disorders, fever, cardiovascular effects, haemorrhage, coagulation and acute phase response, cachexia, anorexia, acute infection, HIV infection, shock states, graft-versus-host reactions, autoimmune disease, reperfusion injury, meningitis, migraine and aspirin-dependent anti-thrombosis; tumour growth, invasion and spread, angiogenesis, metastases, malignant ascites and malignant pleural effusion; cerebral ischaemia, ischaemic heart disease, osteoarthritis, rheumatoid arthritis, osteoporosis, asthma, multiple sclerosis, neurodegeneration, Alzheimer's disease, atherosclerosis, stroke, vasculitis, Crohn's disease and ulcerative colitis; periodontitis, gingivitis; psoriasis, atopic dermatitis, chronic ulcers, epidermolysis bullosa; corneal ulceration, retinopathy and surgical wound healing; rhinitis, allergic conjunctivitis, eczema, anaphylaxis; restenosis, congestive heart failure, endometriosis, atherosclerosis or endosclerosis.

In addition, or in the alternative, the compound or composition of the present invention may be useful in the treatment of disorders listed in WO-A-98/07859. For ease of reference, part of that list is now provided: cytokine and cell proliferation/differentiation activity; immunosuppressant or immunostimulant activity (e.g. for treating immune deficiency, including infection with human immune deficiency virus; regulation of lymphocyte growth; treating cancer and many autoimmune diseases, and to prevent transplant rejection or induce tumour immunity); regulation of haematopoiesis, e.g. treatment of myeloid or lymphoid diseases; promoting growth of bone, cartilage, tendon, ligament and nerve tissue, e.g. for healing wounds, treatment of burns, ulcers and periodontal disease and neurodegeneration; inhibition or activation of follicle-stimulating hormone (modulation of fertility); chemotactic/chemokinetic activity (e.g. for mobilising specific cell types to sites of injury or infection); haemostatic and thrombolytic activity (e.g. for treating haemophilia and stroke); antinflammatory activity (for treating e.g. septic shock or Crohn's disease); as antimicrobials; modulators of e.g. metabolism or behaviour; as analgesics; treating specific deficiency disorders; in treatment of e.g. psoriasis, in human or veterinary medicine.

In addition, or in the alternative, the composition of the present invention may be useful in the treatment of disorders listed in WO-A-98/09985. For ease of reference, part of that list is now provided: macrophage inhibitory and/or T cell inhibitory activity and thus, anti-inflammatory activity; anti-immune activity, i.e. inhibitory effects against a cellular and/or humoral immune response, including a response not associated with inflammation; inhibit

252

20
 21
 22
 23
 24
 25
 26
 27
 28
 29
 30
 31
 32
 33
 34
 35
 36
 37
 38
 39
 40
 41
 42
 43
 44
 45
 46
 47
 48
 49
 50
 51
 52
 53
 54
 55
 56
 57
 58
 59
 60
 61
 62
 63
 64
 65
 66
 67
 68
 69
 70
 71
 72
 73
 74
 75
 76
 77
 78
 79
 80
 81
 82
 83
 84
 85
 86
 87
 88
 89
 90
 91
 92
 93
 94
 95
 96
 97
 98
 99
 100
 101
 102
 103
 104
 105
 106
 107
 108
 109
 110
 111
 112
 113
 114
 115
 116
 117
 118
 119
 120
 121
 122
 123
 124
 125
 126
 127
 128
 129
 130
 131
 132
 133
 134
 135
 136
 137
 138
 139
 140
 141
 142
 143
 144
 145
 146
 147
 148
 149
 150
 151
 152
 153
 154
 155
 156
 157
 158
 159
 160
 161
 162
 163
 164
 165
 166
 167
 168
 169
 170
 171
 172
 173
 174
 175
 176
 177
 178
 179
 180
 181
 182
 183
 184
 185
 186
 187
 188
 189
 190
 191
 192
 193
 194
 195
 196
 197
 198
 199
 200
 201
 202
 203
 204
 205
 206
 207
 208
 209
 210
 211
 212
 213
 214
 215
 216
 217
 218
 219
 220
 221
 222
 223
 224
 225
 226
 227
 228
 229
 230
 231
 232
 233
 234
 235
 236
 237
 238
 239
 240
 241
 242
 243
 244
 245
 246
 247
 248
 249
 250
 251
 252
 253
 254
 255
 256
 257
 258
 259
 260
 261
 262
 263
 264
 265
 266
 267
 268
 269
 270
 271
 272
 273
 274
 275
 276
 277
 278
 279
 280
 281
 282
 283
 284
 285
 286
 287
 288
 289
 290
 291
 292
 293
 294
 295
 296
 297
 298
 299
 300
 301
 302
 303
 304
 305
 306
 307
 308
 309
 310
 311
 312
 313
 314
 315
 316
 317
 318
 319
 320
 321
 322
 323
 324
 325
 326
 327
 328
 329
 330
 331
 332
 333
 334
 335
 336
 337
 338
 339
 340
 341
 342
 343
 344
 345
 346
 347
 348
 349
 350
 351
 352
 353
 354
 355
 356
 357
 358
 359
 360
 361
 362
 363
 364
 365
 366
 367
 368
 369
 370
 371
 372
 373
 374
 375
 376
 377
 378
 379
 380
 381
 382
 383
 384
 385
 386
 387
 388
 389
 390
 391
 392
 393
 394
 395
 396
 397
 398
 399
 400
 401
 402
 403
 404
 405
 406
 407
 408
 409
 410
 411
 412
 413
 414
 415
 416
 417
 418
 419
 420
 421
 422
 423
 424
 425
 426
 427
 428
 429
 430
 431
 432
 433
 434
 435
 436
 437
 438
 439
 440
 441
 442
 443
 444
 445
 446
 447
 448
 449
 450
 451
 452
 453
 454
 455
 456
 457
 458
 459
 460
 461
 462
 463
 464
 465
 466
 467
 468
 469
 470
 471
 472
 473
 474
 475
 476
 477
 478
 479
 480
 481
 482
 483
 484
 485
 486
 487
 488
 489
 490
 491
 492
 493
 494
 495
 496
 497
 498
 499
 500
 501
 502
 503
 504
 505
 506
 507
 508
 509
 510
 511
 512
 513
 514
 515
 516
 517
 518
 519
 520
 521
 522
 523
 524
 525
 526
 527
 528
 529
 530
 531
 532
 533
 534
 535
 536
 537
 538
 539
 540
 541

43

253

254

inflammation, septic shock, infectious diseases, inflammatory complications or side effects of surgery, bone marrow transplantation or other transplantation complications and/or side effects, inflammatory and/or immune complications and side effects of gene therapy, e.g. due to infection with a viral carrier, or inflammation associated with AIDS, to suppress or inhibit a humoral and/or cellular immune response, to treat or ameliorate monocyte or leukocyte proliferative diseases, e.g. leukaemia, by reducing the amount of monocytes or lymphocytes, for the prevention and/or treatment of graft rejection in cases of transplantation of natural or artificial cells, tissue and organs such as cornea, bone marrow, organs, lenses, pacemakers, natural or artificial skin tissue.

10

COMPOUND PREPARATION

The compounds of the present invention may be prepared by reacting an appropriate alcohol with a suitable chloride. By way of example, the sulphamate compounds of the present invention may be prepared by reacting an appropriate alcohol with a suitable sulfamoyl chloride, of the formula $R_1R_2NSO_2Cl$.

15

Typical conditions for carrying out the reaction are as follows.

20

Sodium hydride and a sulfamoyl chloride are added to a stirred solution of the alcohol in anhydrous dimethyl formamide at 0°C. Subsequently, the reaction is allowed to warm to room temperature whereupon stirring is continued for a further 24 hours. The reaction mixture is poured onto a cold saturated solution of sodium bicarbonate and the resulting aqueous phase is extracted with dichloromethane. The combined organic extracts are dried over anhydrous $MgSO_4$. Filtration followed by solvent evaporation in vacuo and co-evaporated with toluene affords a crude residue which is further purified by flash chromatography.

25

30

Preferably, the alcohol is derivatised, as appropriate, prior to reaction with the sulfamoyl chloride. Where necessary, functional groups in the alcohol may be protected in known manner and the protecting group or groups removed at the end of the reaction.

35

Preferably, the sulphamate compounds are prepared according to the teachings of Page *et al* (1990 Tetrahedron 46; 2059-2088). Alternatively, the sulphamate compounds may be prepared in accordance with WO 96/05216 or WO 96/05217.

SUMMARY

154

254 257

In summation, the present invention provides novel compositions suitable for oral contraception, hormone replacement therapy, the inhibition of E1-STS as well as other therapeutic applications.

5

EXAMPLES

The present invention will now be described only by way of example with reference to the accompanying drawings in which:-

- 10 Figure 1 presents a flow chart;
Figure 2 presents a graph;
Figure 3 presents a graph;
Figure 4 presents a graph;
Figure 5 presents a graph;
15 Figure 6 presents a graph;
Figure 7 presents graphs;
Figure 8 presents graphs;
Figure 9 presents a graph;
Figure 10 presents a graph;
20 Figure 11 presents graphs;

The following compound(s) according to the present invention were prepared

Preparation of oestrone-3-sulphamate

25

Sodium hydride (60% dispersion; 2 eq) and sulphamoyl chloride (2 eq) were added to a stirred solution of oestrone (1 eq) in anhydrous dimethyl formamide at 0°C. Subsequently, the reaction was allowed to warm to room temperature whereupon stirring was continued for a further 24 hours.

30

The reaction mixture was poured onto a cold saturated solution of sodium bicarbonate and the resulting aqueous phase was extracted with dichloromethane. The combined organic extracts were dried over anhydrous MgSO₄. Filtration followed solvent evaporation in vacuo and co-evaporation with toluene afforded a crude residue which is further purified by
35 flash chromatography.

Analysis showed the following data:

155

25 25

$\delta^1\text{H}$ (270MHz; CD_3OD): 0.91 (s, 3H, $\text{C}_{17}\text{-Me}$), 1.40-2.55 (series of m, 13H), 2.90-2.92 (m, 2H), 7.04 (br d, 2H, $\text{J}=10.44\text{Hz}$), 7.33 (br d, 1H, $\text{J}=8.42\text{Hz}$).

5 $\delta^{13}\text{C}$ (67.8MHz; CD_3OD): 14.53 (q, $\text{C}_{17}\text{-Me}$), 22.80 (t), 27.24 (t), 27.73 (t), 30.68 (t), 33.05 (t), 37.01 (t), 39.76 (d), 45.73 (s, C_{18}), 51.86 (d), 120.76 (d), 123.54 (d), 127.89 (d), 139.83 (s), 150.27 (s), 223.87 (s, C=O).

10 m/z (%): 349 (9) (m^+), 270 (100), 213 (26), 185 (43), 172 (31), 159 (21), 146 (36), 91 (33), 89 (37), 57 (73), 43 (56), 29 (24).

Microanalysis:

	C	H	N
Expected:	61.87%	6.63%	4.01%
15 Found:	61.90%	6.58%	3.95%

Studies with Oestradiol Sulfamate (J995)

20 Technology

Oestradiol Sulfamate (J995) was investigated with respect to its hormonal properties *in vitro* and *in vivo*. *In vitro* studies included the evaluation of its specific binding to oestrogen receptors using cytosolic preparations of uterine tissue of rats and mice and MCF-7 tumor cells. *In vivo* studies were performed on several animal species including intact and ovariectomised rats and cynomolgus monkeys. These species served for detailed pharmacodynamic and pharmacokinetic studies at parenteral and oral administration of the compound.

25 30 Studies in the human were performed with oral administration of the compound in postmenopausal women. Several doses at single and multiple administration were evaluated. *In vitro* studies were performed with solutions in oily vehicles for parenteral administration. Oral treatment was performed with suspensions of crystalline J995 in aqueous vehicles. Clinical studies were performed with amorphous drug substance 35 galenically formulated with a mixture of conventional ingredients as capsules or tablets.

In vitro studies revealed that J995 per se has no affinity to the estrogen receptor. There

156

250 256

was no specific binding of radioactively labelled J995 to the estrogen receptor of mice, rats, and the human. A huge excess of J995 was unable to displace specifically bound radioactively labelled Oestradiol. Both findings are strong evidence that J995 exerts oestrogenic effects after transformation from an hormonally inactive into an hormonally active molecule. The prodrug J995, or its main metabolite Oestrone Sulfamate (EMATE), is hydrolysed to sulfamic acid and the natural oestrogenic hormones Oestradiol and Oestrone, respectively (Fig. 1).

Due to preferential transport in erythrocytes the prodrug and J995 has peculiar pharmacokinetic properties. J995 does not circulate in the plasma fraction of blood in as do conventional oestrogens, but an amount of 98-99% of J995 circulates in the erythrocyte compartment. This erythrocyte transport leads to much reduced hepatic hormone action and extraction at first liver passage and to long lasting release of the J995 from erythrocytes which function as a depot.

Advantages of J995 with respect to the oral oestrogen therapy:

- **Reduction of individual variation of blood levels (Fig. 2 and 3):**

The gold standard of oral oestrogen therapy is ethinyl estradiol. This compound does not lead to well defined blood levels (Fig. 4). The disadvantage of this individual variation is the necessity to administer higher doses than necessary in most individuals in order to achieve an acceptable rate of successful treatments.

- **Reduction of oestrogen dose and load of active metabolites which are suspected to promote the growth of some hormone dependent tumours:**

The conventional oral oestrogen replacement therapy with the so called conjugated oestrogens, oestradiol, oestradiol valerate or oestrone sulfate leads to a large pool of oestrone sulphate in the circulation. The hydrolysis of some of this metabolite leads to the therapeutically relevant blood levels of oestrone and oestradiol. However, oestrone sulphate has the disadvantage that it is particularly actively hydrolysed by sulfatase in breast tumour tissue which may generate potentially growth promoting oestrogens. J995, in relation to its dose, leads to higher and much longer lasting oestradiol levels than Oestradiol Valerate at the same dose (Fig. 6, 7). The downstream arising metabolite oestrone sulphate stays by at least factor 10 lower than under Oestradiol Valerate treatment (Fig. 5).

157

257 257

- **Reduction of hepatic estrogenic effects:**

A high dose of oestrogen is essential for conventional oral oestrogen therapy in order to cope with the substantial hepatic loss of hormone. The drawback of this high dose is an unfavourable effect on oestrogen regulated hepatic functions. These include effect on factors of the hemostatic system and related thromboembolic disorders, elevation of angiotensinogen in the circulation and subsequent effects on adrenal, renal, and vascular functions, changes of bile secretion, and lipid metabolism. The liver bypassing mechanism of action of J995 and the ultralow dose strategy according to this invention avoids the corresponding undesired effects of climacteric oestrogen treatment. Orally administered J995 reaches the erythrocyte pool to almost 100%. Far more than 50% of this prodrug is appearing as oestrone and oestradiol in the circulation (Fig. 11). This permits a much reduced dose compared to conventional oral oestrogen therapy per time unit.

- **Achievement of constant blood levels:**

Blood levels of oestrogens fluctuate from day to day under conventional daily oral oestrogen treatment (Fig. 5, 6, 7) whereas J995 leads to very constant, long lasting blood levels (Fig. 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10). Figure 9 shows almost constant oestrone sulphate levels which reflect the upstream generation of oestradiol and oestrone after 14 days of treatment with J995 at a very low dose of 100µg per day in the wash out phase over 144 hours.

- **Effects of Oestradiol Sulphamate in oestrogen deficient bones:**

Constant and well defined blood levels as described here cannot be achieved with the established oral oestrogen therapy. J995 allows a precise osteoprotective treatment just below the threshold which leads to endometrial growth. The absence of endometrial effects permits, in a preferred aspect, the use J995 without the simultaneous administration of progestins.

Improvements which can be reached with an oestrogen only preparation for oestrogen replacement therapy based on J995

- **Bleeding free therapy:**

The rationale of a combined oestrogen/progestin treatment is the control of endometrial proliferation which represents a risk of endometrial cancer development. The price for this protective essential effect is quite substantial. Both the cyclic and the continuous

158

combined treatment lead to uterine bleedings which are probably the most important reason to discontinue the oestrogen replacement therapy.

- **Effects on wellbeing:**

- 5 Another established negative aspect of this treatment is an impairment of the positive effects which oestrogens exert on the wellbeing of climacteric women.

- **Breast:**

- 10 Question are raised by the proliferative effects of progestins in the breast in analogy to the effects of progesterone in pregnancy. The concern about these effects is related to their potential role in the development of mammary cancer.

- **Metabolic side effects:**

- 15 Progestins, as progesterone itself, have important effects on a wide spectrum of metabolic functions. These include the secretion of insulin and insulin resistance, which is reduced, and effects on the lipid metabolism. Corresponding effects represent undesired effects in the context of oestrogen replacement therapy.

Significance of oestrogen replacement therapy:

- 20 Women have a constant loss of bone mass after the cessation of ovarian oestrogen secretion after the menopause. Due to the fact that life expectancy of women is very high and still increasing it is mandatory to prevent bone loss and the resulting skeletal fragility. This is by far the most important risk factor for disability and also for morbidity, and
25 mortality at high age.

- All publications and patents mentioned in the above specification ("herein cited documents"), and all documents cited or referenced in herein cited documents, are
30 hereby incorporated herein by reference.

- Various modifications and variations of the present invention will be apparent to those skilled in the art without departing from the scope and spirit of the invention. Although the invention has been described in connection with specific preferred embodiments, it
35 should be understood that the invention as claimed should not be unduly limited to such specific embodiments. Indeed, various modifications of the described modes for carrying

50218730.071700

159

29

out the invention which are obvious to those skilled in chemistry, biology or related fields are intended to be within the scope of the following claims.

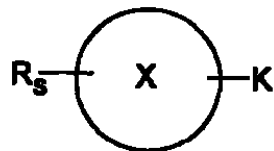
X60

60218730.071700

CLAIMS

1. A pharmaceutical composition comprising

(i) a compound of Formula (I)



Formula I

wherein: X is a hydrocarbyl ring having at least 4 atoms in the ring; K is a hydrocarbyl group; Rs is a sulphamate group;

(ii) optionally admixed with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, diluent, excipient or adjuvant,

wherein the compound is present in an amount to provide a dosage of no greater than 200 µg/day.

2. A pharmaceutical composition according to claim 1 wherein the compound is present in an amount to provide a dosage of from 10 to 200 µg/day.

3. A pharmaceutical composition according to claim 1 or 2 wherein the compound is present in an amount to provide a dosage of from 50 to 200 µg/day.

4. A pharmaceutical composition according to claim 1 or 2 wherein the compound is present in an amount to provide a dosage of from 20 to 50 µg/day.

5. A pharmaceutical composition according to claim 1 wherein the compound is present in an amount no greater than 200 µg/dose.

6. A pharmaceutical composition according to claim 1 wherein the compound is present in an amount no greater than 1 mg/dose.

7. A pharmaceutical composition according to claim 1 wherein the compound is present in an amount no greater than 4 mg/dose.

8. A pharmaceutical composition according to any one of the preceding claims wherein X in combination with K mimics a steroidal structure.

0318730.071700

261

9. A pharmaceutical composition according to any one of the preceding claims wherein K is a cyclic group.

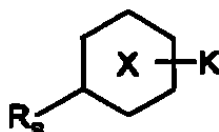
5 10. A pharmaceutical composition according to any one of the preceding claims wherein X is a six-membered ring.

11. A pharmaceutical composition according to any one of the preceding claims wherein the ring X has six carbon atoms in the ring.

10

12. A pharmaceutical composition according to any one of the preceding claims wherein the compound is of Formula II

Formula II



wherein each of R_s, X and K are as defined in claim 1.

15 13. A pharmaceutical composition according to any one of the preceding claims wherein X in combination with K is a steroidal ring structure.

14. A pharmaceutical composition according to any one of the preceding claims wherein group K and ring X are a steroid ring structure or a substituted derivative thereof.

20

15. A pharmaceutical composition according to claim 14 wherein the R_s group is at position 3 of the ring X.

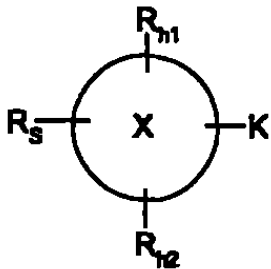
25 16. A pharmaceutical composition according to any one of the preceding claims wherein R_s is a sulphamate group.

17. A pharmaceutical composition according to any one of the preceding claims wherein the compound is of Formula III

162

762

Formula III



wherein X, K and Rs are as defined in claim 1; and wherein Rh1 is an optional halo group; Rh2 is an optional halo group; at least one of Rh1 and Rh2 is present

18. A pharmaceutical composition according to claim 17 wherein Rh1 is at position 2 of the ring X.
19. A pharmaceutical composition according to claim 17 or 18 wherein Rh2 is at position 4 of the ring X.
20. A composition according to any one of the preceding claims for use in medicine.
21. Use of a composition according to any one of claims 1 to 19 in the manufacture of a medicament for use in oral contraception.
22. Use of a composition according to any one of claims 1 to 19 in the manufacture of a medicament for use in hormone replacement therapy.
23. Use of a composition according to any one of claims 1 to 19 in the manufacture of a medicament for bone protecting hormone replacement therapy without endometrial stimulation.
24. Use of a composition according to any one of claims 1 to 19 in the manufacture of a medicament for use in the therapy of a condition or disease associated with STS.
25. Use of a composition according to any one of claims 1 to 19 in the manufacture of a medicament for use in the therapy of a condition or disease associated with adverse STS levels.

763

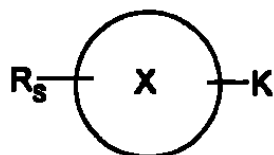
263

ABSTRACT

COMPOSITION

5

There is provided a pharmaceutical composition comprising (i) a compound of the formula



10

wherein: X is a hydrocarbyl ring having at least 4 atoms in the ring; K is a hydrocarbyl group; Rs is a sulphamate group; (ii) optionally admixed with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, diluent, excipient or adjuvant, wherein the compound is present in an amount to provide a dosage of no greater than 200 µg/day.

00218730.071700

164

Main routes of biotransformation of estradiol valerate vs estradiol sulfamate (J995)

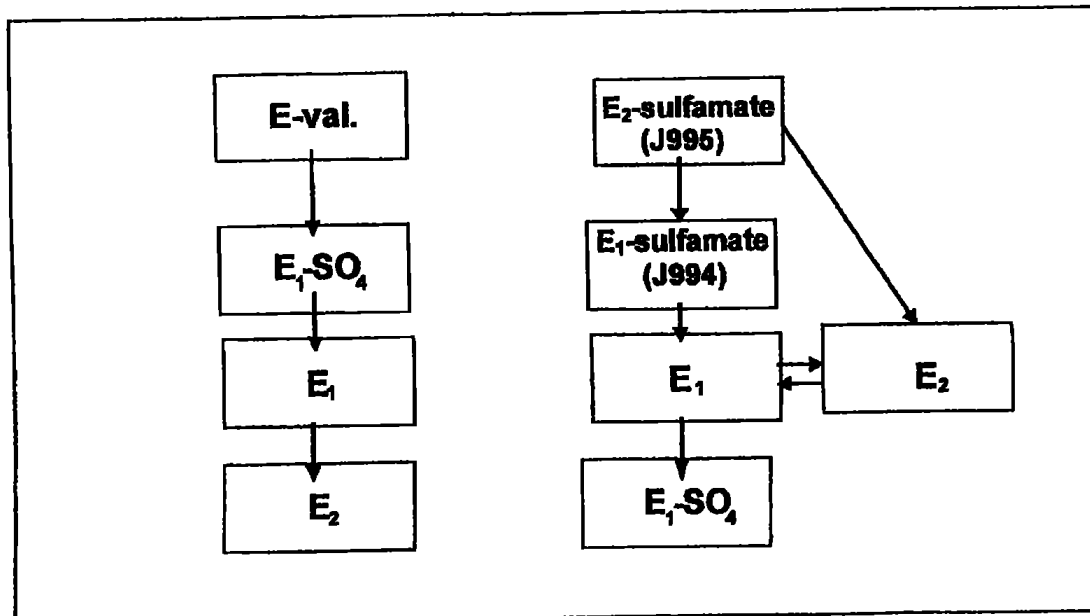
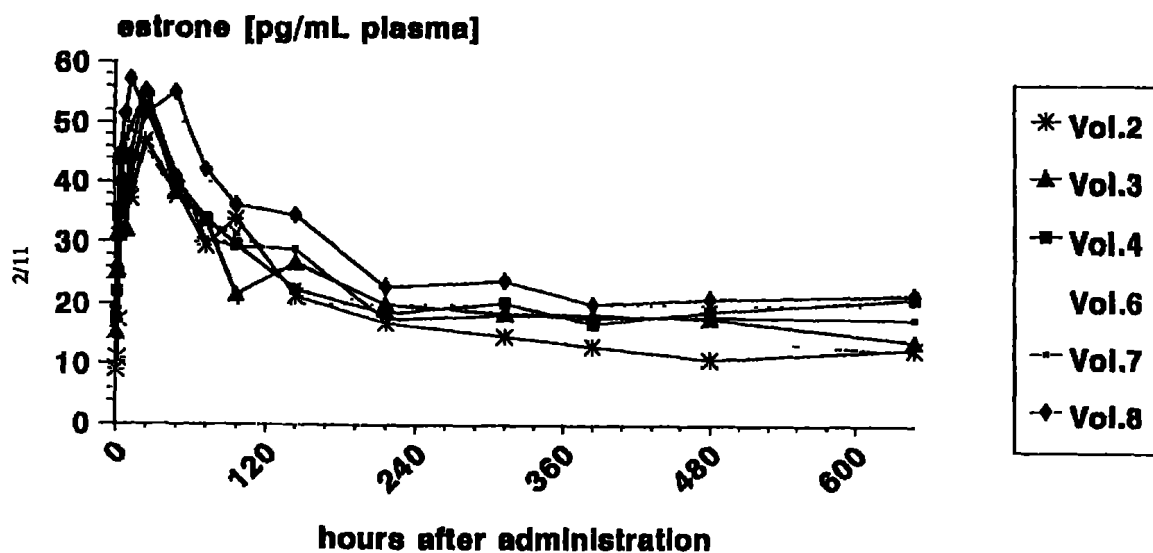


Fig 1

60218730 .071700

Course of plasma estrone in menopausal women (n=6)
after a single oral dose of
1mg of Estradiol Sulfamate (J995)



60218730.071700

Course of plasma estrone in menopausal women (n=6)
after a single oral dose of
4mg of Estradiol Sulfamate (J995)

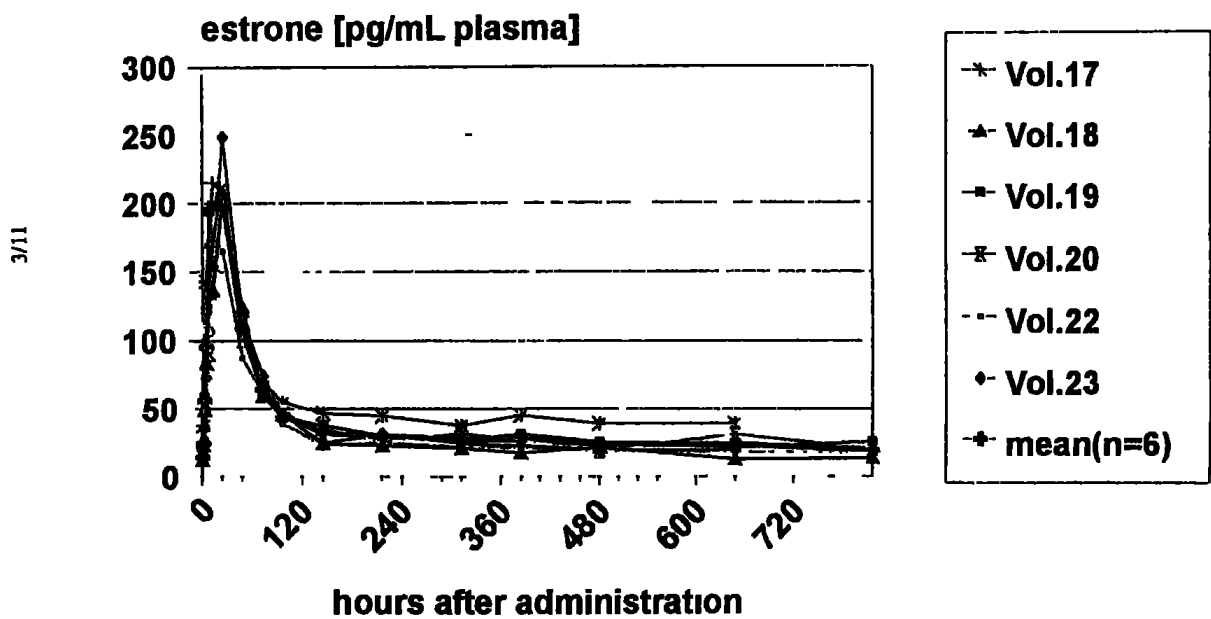


Fig 3

5023 9720 071798

Individual variation in plasma levels after a single oral dose (50µg) of ethinylestradiol given under rigidly standardized conditions

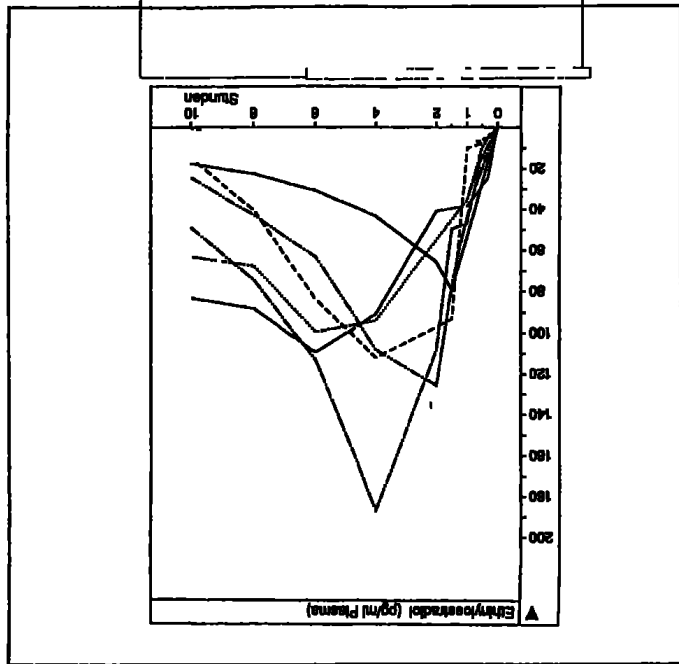


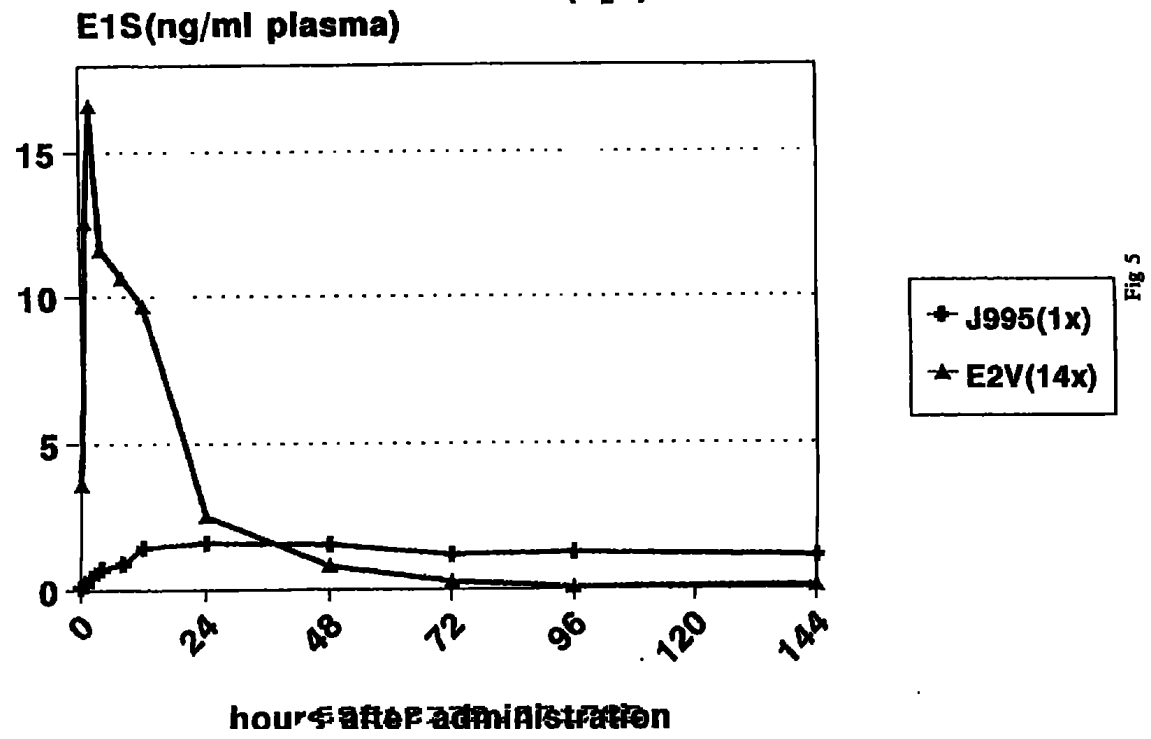
Fig 4

Goldzieher JW et al: Am Obst-Gyn-160/5 (1989) 1260-1264

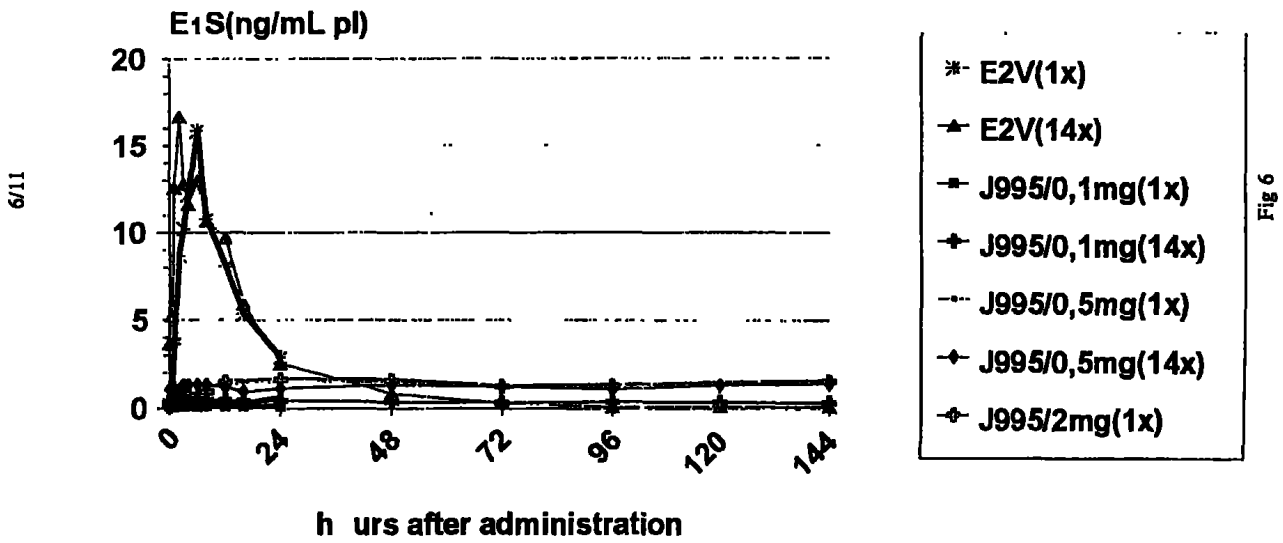
11/1999

792

Plasma estrone sulfate in menopausal women:
Comparison between a single oral dose of 2 mg Estradiol
Sulfamate (J995) and multiple oral doses of 2 mg Estradiol
Valerate (E₂V)



Course of plasma estrone sulfate in menopausal women (n=6)
after various oral doses of
Estradiol Sulfamate (J995) and 2mg Estradiol Valerate (E2V)



50218720.071700

Course of plasma estrone and estradiol in menopausal women (n=6) after a single oral dose of 2mg Estradiol sulfamate (J995) and 2mg Estradiol valerate (E₂V)

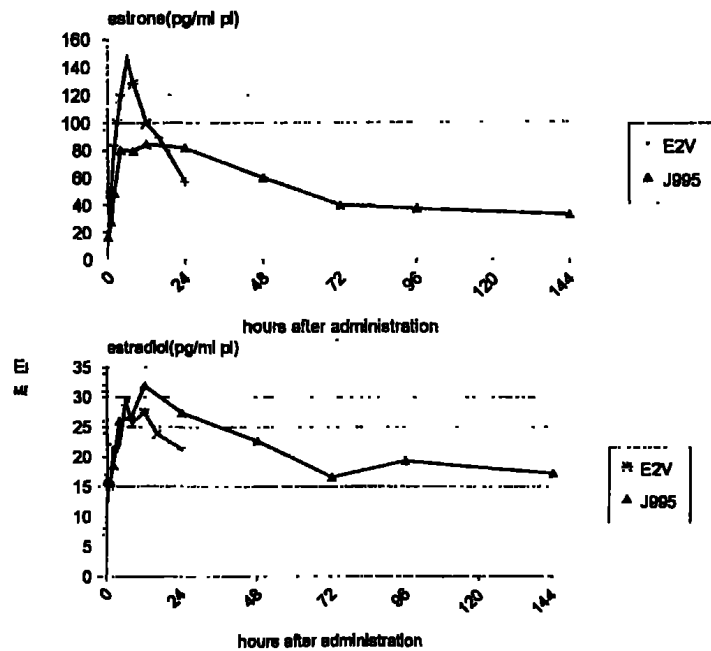


Fig 7

60218730.071700

221

8/11

**Course of plasma estrone and estradiol in
m nopausal women (n=6) after a single
ral dose of placebo, 0.5mg, 1mg, 2mg,
4mg, 8mg of Estradiol Sulfamate (J995)**

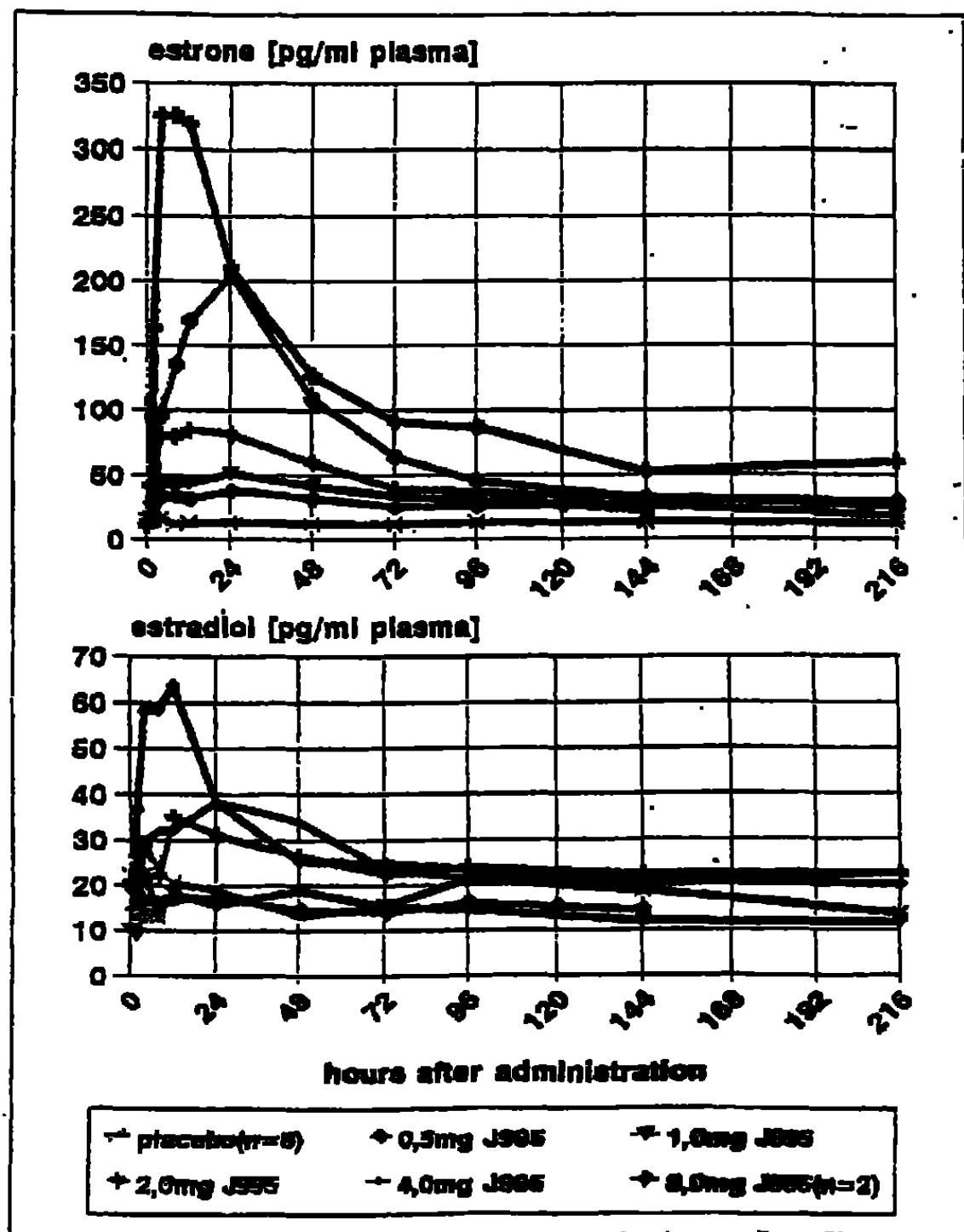
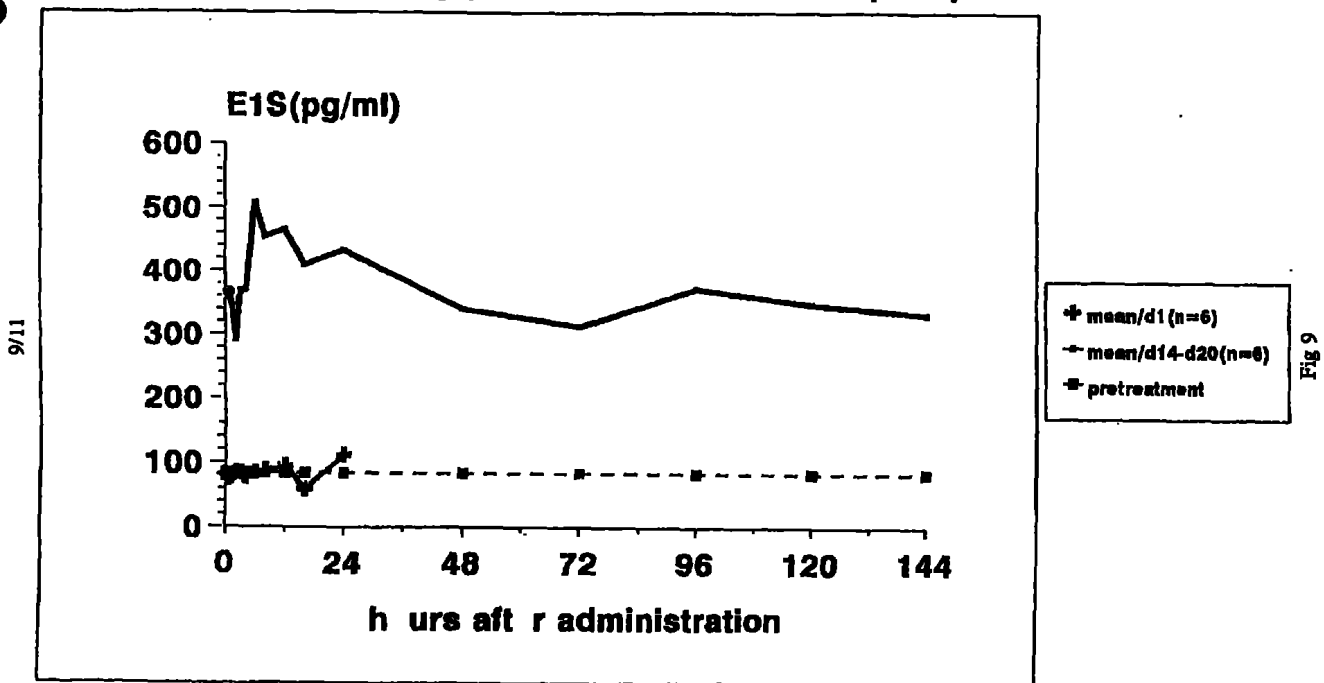


Fig 8

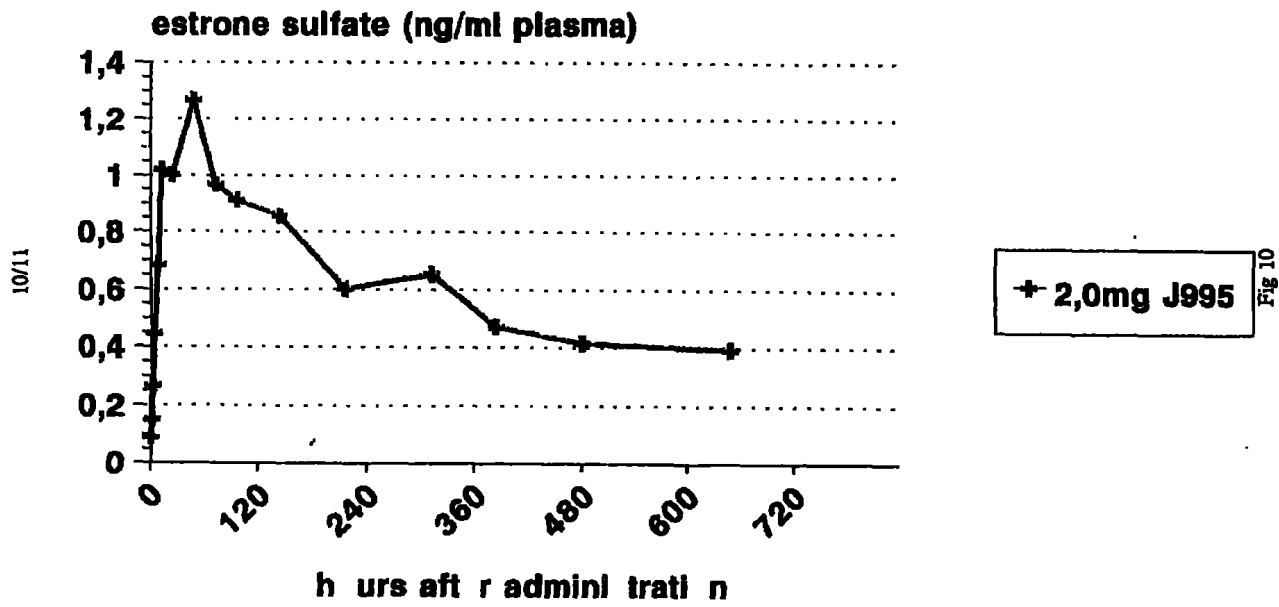
172

Course of plasma estrone sulfate (E1S) in menopausal women (n=6)
after multiple oral doses of
100µg of Estradiol Sulfamate (J995)



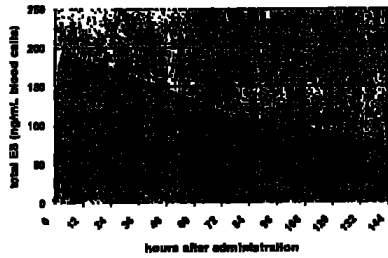
50218730.071700

Course of plasma estrone sulfate in menopausal women (n=6)
after single oral doses of
2mg of Estradiol Sulfamate(J995)

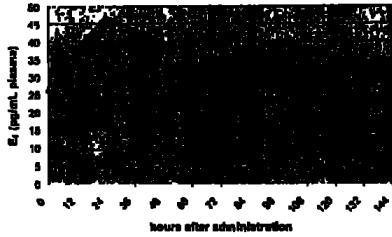


60218730.071700

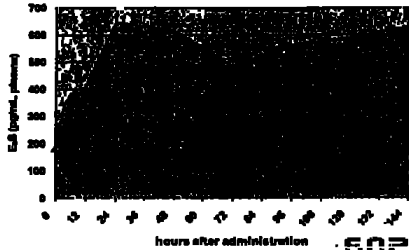
Estimation of oral bioavailability of estradiol sulfamate (J995) at a single oral dose of 0.5 mg



Erythrocyte conc.: Ca. 200 ng/mL erythrocytes/ca
100µg/L blood
≈ 500 µg/ 5L blood



Clearance of E₁: 40 pg/ml over 5 days
*calculated 40 ng/l over 5 days
1870 l x 40 ng/l /day
374 µg/ 5 days



Clearance of E₁S: 700 pg/ml over 5 days
*calculated 700 ng/l over 5 days
110 l x 700 ng/l /day
385 µg/ 5 days

*Longcope C and Williams KIH:

502-1873 Clin Endocrinol Metab 38 (1974) 602-607

Fig 11